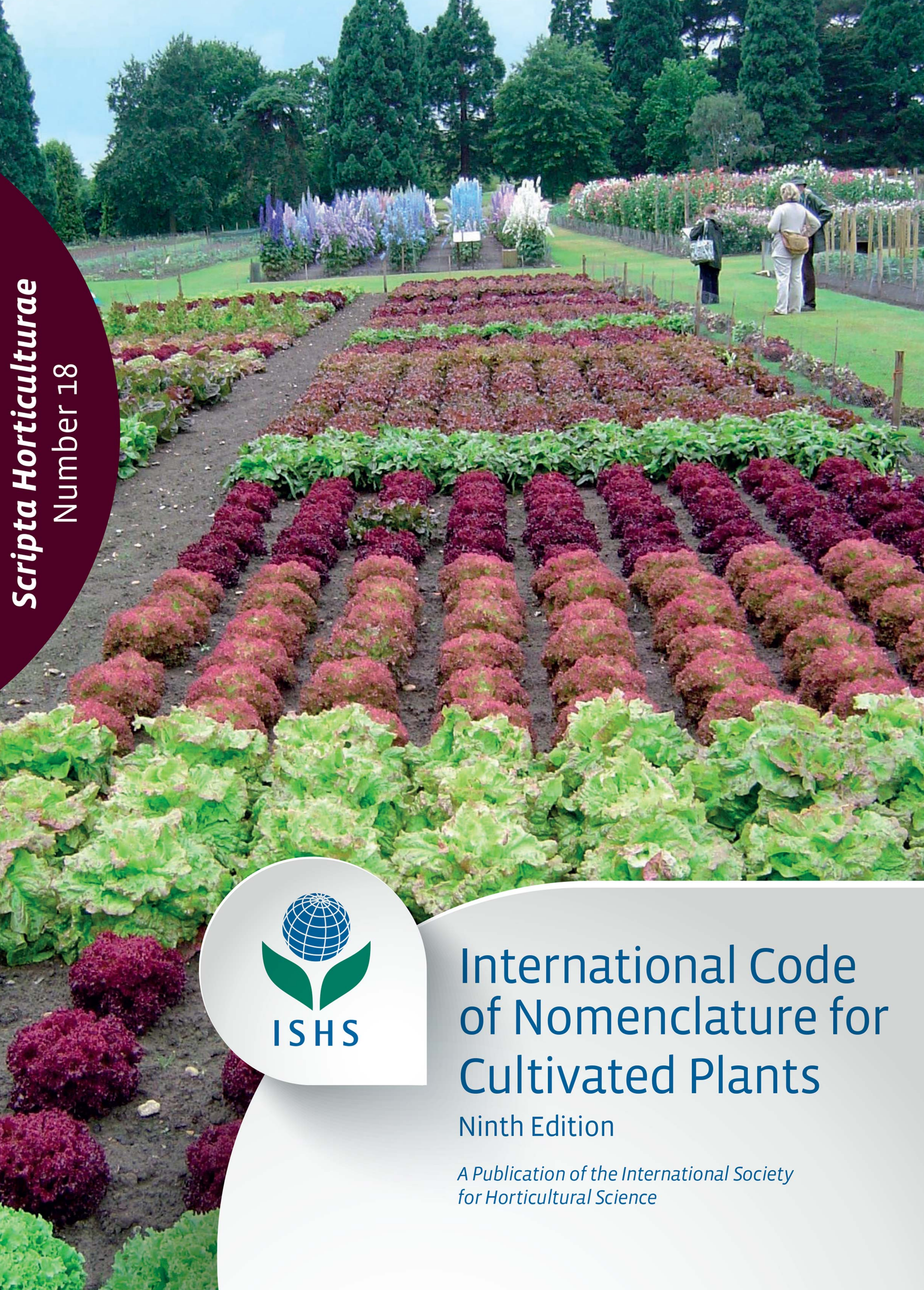


Scripta Horticultrae
Number 18

ISHS

International Code of Nomenclature for Cultivated Plants

Ninth Edition

A Publication of the International Society for Horticultural Science

INTERNATIONAL CODE OF NOMENCLATURE FOR CULTIVATED PLANTS

(ICNCP* or *Cultivated Plant Code)

incorporating the Rules and Recommendations
for naming plants in cultivation

Ninth Edition

Adopted by the International Union of Biological Sciences
International Commission for the Nomenclature of Cultivated Plants

Prepared and edited by

C.D. Brickell (Commission Chairman), C. Alexander, J.J. Cubey, J.C. David,
M.H.A. Hoffman, A.C. Leslie, V. Malécot, Xiaobai Jin,
members of the Editorial Committee

June, 2016

ISHS

ISSN 1813-9205
ISBN 978-94-6261-116-0, *Scripta Horticulturae* Number 18

Published by ISHS, June 2016
Executive Director of ISHS: Ir. J. Van Assche
ISHS Secretariat, PO Box 500, 3001 Leuven 1, Belgium

Printed by Drukkerij Station Drukwerk, PO Box 3099, 2220 CB Katwijk aan Zee, The Netherlands

© 2016 by the International Society for Horticultural Science (ISHS). All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced and/or published in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, including photocopying, microfilm and recording, or by any information storage and retrieval system, without written permission from the publishers.

Photograph on the front cover:
Lettuce trial 2003. Credit: RHS / Jacquie Gray.

CONTENTS

Foreword v

Membership of the IUBS International Commission for the Nomenclature of Cultivated Plants vii

Preface ix

Comparison between the 2009 *Code* and this edition xii

New provisions xv

Important dates in this *Code* xvi

Previous editions of this *Code* xvii

PREAMBLE 1

DIVISION I: PRINCIPLES 3

DIVISION II: RULES AND RECOMMENDATIONS 5

Chapter I: General provisions 5

Article 1: Relationship with the International Code of Nomenclature for algae, fungi, and plants 5

Chapter II: Definitions 6

Article 2: The cultivar 6

Article 3: The Group 10

Article 4: The grex 12

Article 5: The chimaera 13

Article 6: The denomination class 13

Article 7: Publication 14

Article 8: Names and epithets 14

Article 9: Date of a name 16

Article 10: Established names 16

Article 11: Accepted names 16

Article 12: Conserved names 18

Article 13: Trade designations 18

Chapter III: Conventions for presentation of names 19

Article 14: Cultivar status 19

Article 15: Group status 19

Article 16: Grex status 20

Article 17: Trade designation status 20

Chapter IV: Limitation to the principle of priority 22

Article 18: Starting points in nomenclature 22

Article 19: Conservation of names 22

Chapter V: Naming plants in cultivation 23

Article 20: Names of wild plants brought into cultivation 23

Article 21: Names of cultivars 23
Article 22: Names of Groups 35
Article 23: Names of grexes 37
Article 24: Names of graft-chimaeras 38
Chapter VI: Publication and establishment 40
Article 25: Conditions of publication 40
Article 26: Date of publication 41
Article 27: Conditions of establishment 42
Article 28: Citation of authors' names 45
Chapter VII: Choice, re-use, and rejection of names 47
Article 29: Choice of names 47
Article 30: Re-use of epithets 48
Article 31: Rejection of names 49
Chapter VIII: Translation, transliteration, and transcription 52
Article 32: Translation of epithets 52
Article 33: Transliteration of epithets 53
Article 34: Transcription of epithets 54
Chapter IX: Spelling (orthography) 57
Article 35: Spelling of epithets 57
DIVISION III: NAMES OF HYBRID GENERA 61
DIVISION IV: REGISTRATION OF NAMES 64
DIVISION V: NOMENCLATURAL STANDARDS 65
DIVISION VI: MODIFICATION OF THIS *CODE* 68
Appendix I: Directory of International Cultivar Registration Authorities 69
Appendix II: Directory of statutory plant registration authorities 88
Appendix III: Places maintaining nomenclatural standards 101
Appendix IV: Libraries holding significant collections of nursery catalogues 106
Appendix V: Special denomination classes 109
Appendix VI: List of conserved and rejected epithets 111
Appendix VII: Latin names of plants 113
Appendix VIII: The nomenclatural filter 117
Appendix IX: Quick guide for new cultivar names 131
Appendix X: Plant designations not governed by the *ICNCP* 135
Appendix XI: Flow chart of nomenclatural bodies and processes 139
Glossary 140
Index of scientific names 161
Subject index 171

FOREWORD

This ninth edition of the *International Code for the Nomenclature for Cultivated Plants* replaces the eighth edition of the *Code* which was published in October 2009 as *Scripta Horticulturae* Number 10 and as *Regnum Vegetabile* Vol. 151.

This new edition derives from decisions taken at a meeting of the IUBS International Commission for the Nomenclature of Cultivated Plants held over 20–21 July 2013 in Beijing, China. Prior to this meeting requests for suggestions to amend the previous *Code* had been sought from all interested parties and some of these proposals were published in *Hanburyana* (Vol. 5, 2011, Vol. 6, 2012 and Vol.7, 2013). All the proposals that had been submitted were collated by Janet Cubey and forwarded to the Commission Members in advance of the meeting, so that those not able to attend could make their opinions known. Copies of the proposals were also circulated to all those attending the Sixth International Symposium on the Taxonomy of Cultivated Plants, which had been held on 15–19 July in Beijing, immediately prior to the Commission meeting. An open discussion on the proposals was held on the final day of the Symposium.

At the Commission meeting all the proposals to amend the *Code* were discussed and where appropriate were voted on by those present. The views of those members unable to attend, as well as opinions expressed by those attending the Symposium, were conveyed to the meeting. At the meeting in Beijing we also benefited from the attendance of three observers whose invited contributions were much appreciated. These were: Yolanda Herta (UPOV, Switzerland), Jean Maison (CPVO, France) and Natalie Iwanycki (Royal Botanical Gardens, Canada). At the conclusion of the meeting an Editorial Committee was appointed to carry out the editing of the *Code* and to arrange for its publication. The Editorial Committee consisted of Chris Brickell (Chairman), Crinan Alexander, John David, Marco Hoffman, Alan Leslie, Valéry Malécot and Xiaobai Jin, with Janet Cubey as Editorial Committee Secretary.

The Commission is very grateful to the Beijing Forestry University and the conveners of the Symposium, Qixiang Zhang and Xiaobai Jin, for providing facilities and hospitality for the Commission meeting.

Initial work on preparing the new edition was carried out at Wisley by Janet Cubey, John David, Alan Leslie and myself, using transcribed recordings taken at the meeting, as well as the notes taken by the Editorial Committee Secretary. Drafts were forwarded to other members of the Editorial Committee and following further discussion and debate a final version (together with a request for an additional vote on the provisions of Art. 34) was circulated to the full Commission membership for further comments and suggestions prior to publication. I would like to thank Xiaobai Jin in particular for

his meticulous attention to detail, which has been extremely helpful during the editorial process.

The Commission is indebted to the following individuals who submitted proposals and suggestions for the revision of this *Code*:

James Armitage (UK), Saskia Bodegom (Netherlands), Roger Cross (Australia), Janet Cubey (UK), Dawn Edwards (UK), Hiroyuki Iketani (Japan), Alan Leslie (UK), John McNeill (UK), Charles Nelson (UK), Richard Sanford (UK), Johan van Scheepen (Netherlands), Julian Shaw (UK), Roger Spencer (Australia), Xiaobai Jin (China), Adrian Young (UK).

I would like to express my gratitude to all these individuals, as well to those who took part in the Beijing Symposium discussions or have subsequently assisted us in preparing this new edition of the *Code*. Richard Sanford (RHS, Wisley) in particular has played a significant role in the preparation of this *Code*, notably in the preparation of both the Appendices and the Indexes. Janet Cubey and John David have both contributed significantly to ensuring the administration of the long editorial process was conducted efficiently and I am grateful to them for their efforts.

Since the last edition of the *Code* we have welcomed two new members: Dr Marco Hoffman, who joins us as the new Commission Secretary, and Janet Cubey, both of whom have already demonstrated their value to the Commission. Two members have stood down from the membership: Dr Wilbert Hetterscheid (our former Secretary) and Dr Niall Green. I am most grateful to them all for their contributions to the Commission.

This will be my last foreword as Chairman of the Commission and I would like to express my gratitude and warmest thanks to all the members of the Commission with whom I have worked over the years both in the preparation of the *Code* and promoting its application to cultivated plants worldwide.

Proposals to modify this *Code* will, when possible, be published in *Hanburyana* and included on the HORTAX website. They should be sent to The Chairman, The Editorial Committee, ICNCP, c/o RHS Garden Wisley, Woking, Surrey GU23 6QB, UK or by email to icncp@rhs.org.uk.

Chris Brickell, Chairman, IUBS International Commission for the Nomenclature of Cultivated Plants and Chairman, Editorial Committee, ICNCP.

IUBS INTERNATIONAL COMMISSION FOR THE NOMENCLATURE OF CULTIVATED PLANTS

Members, July 2013

Chairman
Mr C.D. Brickell
The Camber, The Street
Nutbourne, Pulborough
West Sussex RH20 2HE
United Kingdom

Secretary
Dr M.H.A. Hoffman
Applied Plant Research, Wageningen
PO Box 85, 2160AB Lisse
The Netherlands

Björn Aldén
Gothenburg botanical garden
Carl Skottsbergs gata 22A
SE-41319 Gothenburg
Sweden

Dr Crinan Alexander
Royal Botanic Garden Edinburgh
20A Inverleith Row
Edinburgh EH3 5LR
United Kingdom

Dr B.R. Baum
Agriculture & Agri-Food Canada
960 Carling Avenue
Ottawa, Ontario
Canada K1A 0C6

Dr Janet J. Cubey
RHS Garden Wisley
Woking
Surrey GU23 6QB
United Kingdom

Dr J.C. David
RHS Garden Wisley
Woking
Surrey GU23 6QB
United Kingdom

Ing. C. (Kees) van Ettekoven
Naktuinbouw, Sotaweg 22
2371 GD Roelofarendsveen
The Netherlands

Dr Hugh F. Glen
Box 1781, Forest Hills
Durban, 3624 South Africa

Dr Hiroyuki Iketani
National Institute of Fruit Tree Sciences
NARO
2-1 Fujimoto, Tsukuba
305-8605 Japan

Dr A.C. Leslie
109 York Street
Cambridge CB1 2PZ
United Kingdom

Dr Valéry Malécot
Institut de Recherches en Horticulture et
Semences & Département Écologie
Agrocampus-Ouest Centre d'Angers
Institut National d'Horticulture et de Paysage
2 rue André Le Nôtre
49045 Angers Cedex 01
France

Prof. J. McNeill
(appointed by IAPT for IUBS)
Royal Botanic Garden Edinburgh
20A Inverleith Row
Edinburgh EH3 5LR
United Kingdom

Prof. Xiang Qibai
Nanjing Forestry University
Lonpan Road 159
Nanjing 210037, Jiangsu
China

Dr Roger Spencer
Royal Botanic Gardens
South Yarra, Victoria 3141
Australia

Freek Vrugtman
Royal Botanical Gardens
PO Box 399
Hamilton, Ontario
L8N 3H8
Canada

Dr John H. Wiersema
US Department of Agriculture/Agricultural Research Service
National Germplasm Resources Laboratory
Bldg 003, Beltsville Agricultural Research Center
Beltsville, Maryland 20705-2350
United States of America

Dr Jin Xiaobai
Institute of Botany
Chinese Academy of Sciences
20 Nanxincun, Xiangshan
Beijing 100093
China

PREFACE

This ninth edition of this *Code* maintains the overall format and style of the eighth (2009) edition and whilst the general order of the Articles remains the same, some alteration to numbering within the Articles has been made to take into account the addition or removal of some provisions. A comparative key listing changes in numbering within the Rules, Notes, Recommendations and Divisions between the 2009 edition and the current edition is provided on page xii.

A comparative list of new provisions appearing in Divisions II–VI is also provided to indicate differences between the 2009 *Code* and this edition (page xv).

Whilst this *Code* is written in English, the Commission hopes that translations will be made available in other languages and scripts so that it may be more widely used in the naming of cultivated plants throughout the world. The Commission has continued to pay particular attention to differing linguistic customs, taking into account where possible the formation and use of words and terms in different parts of the world.

The Preamble outlines the justification for the publication of this *Code* and describes the way in which the various provisions operate. It will be noted that the Rules and Recommendations of this *Code* are also intended to apply to all organisms traditionally treated as plants, including all algae and fungi.

The Principles are essentially the same as in the 2009 *Code*. There are two changes. The first reflects the renaming of the former *International Code of Botanical Nomenclature* as the *International Code of Nomenclature for algae, fungi and plants*, whilst the second acknowledges the use of trade designations, although making it clear these are not regulated by this *Code*.

The following changes and amendments relating to the Rules and Recommendations for the categories cultivar, Group and grex have been introduced in this edition of the *Code*:

Exceptionally it will be permitted to publish the name for a new cultivar before the original individual has been propagated (Art. 2.3 Note 5).

Where a collective name has been given to a plant composed of different cultivars on a single rootstock, that name is to be treated as a trade designation (Art. 2.22 Note 7).

A distinction is made between graft-chimaeras and mutation-chimaeras (Art. 5.1 and 5.2).

A name which has to be adopted following its use in a grant from a statutory plant registration authority, and which replaces an earlier accepted name, is to be referred to

as the adopted name. The earlier accepted name becomes a synonym of the adopted name (Art. 11.3).

It is noted that rules employed by statutory registration authorities in considering the acceptability of epithets (or 'denominations') may differ from those in this *Code* (Art. 11.3 Note 1).

Further guidance is provided to make it clear that code form epithets are acceptable when they differ by only one character or numeral (Art. 21.25).

It is recommended that an epithet established in a non-Roman script should consist of no more than 30 characters when transliterated or transcribed (Rec. 21K).

It is recommended that epithets should not contain the epithet of a species from the genus in which the cultivar, Group or grex belongs (Rec. 21M).

It is recommended that where the original application of a cultivar epithet can no longer be ascertained, different lineages may be distinguished by appending a device such as the name of the originator of that lineage (Rec. 21N).

It is recommended that Series may be treated as Groups where appropriate, and where it does not cause confusion (Rec. 22B).

Publications relating to an ICRA Register or Checklist which have appeared only in electronic media, can be made nomenclaturally effective by the printing and deposit of two copies in a designated library (Rec. 25C).

The provision to permit the date of a published, but undated, trade catalogue to be established by subsequent research is extended to any publication (Art. 26.3).

It is recommended that when an epithet is derived from a different language to that of its publication the original word or phrase should be given at the time of establishment (Rec. 27D.3).

The decision taken by an ICRA in choosing between competing names for the same plant must be fixed by publication of that decision (Art. 29.2).

The translation of an epithet, and the treatment of that translation as a trade designation, is to be avoided if the translation replicates an existing epithet in the denomination class (Art. 32.1 Note 1).

It is noted that where different authors have used separate transcription systems, transcribed epithets may not be identical, even when based on the same original epithet (Rec. 34A.1).

It is recommended that reverse transcription should return words to their original form, irrespective of the demands of the transcription system used (Rec. 34A.2).

It is recommended that where a cultivar or grex name appears in a publication in a language that uses a non-alphabetic script different from that of its original publication, the original, or the Roman transcribed epithet, should be used whenever possible (Rec. 34A.3).

It is noted that this *Code* follows Kenkyusha's New Japanese–English Dictionary in using hyphens in transcribed epithets, contrary to the practice in the *ALA-LC Romanization Tables* (Rec. 34D.1 Note 2).

Where duplicates of nomenclatural standards have been prepared, and are separately filed, these may be referred to as duplicate standards (Div. V.1).

It is noted that the names of graft-chimaeric genera are governed entirely by this *Code*. As they do not have types there are no type specimens or nomenclatural standards (Div. V.1 Note 2).

In order to be effective the word standard (or a phrase such as nomenclatural standard or standard specimen) should be included in any statement where a standard is designated (Div. V Note 9).

The way in which dates are described have, as far as possible, been made consistent throughout the *Code*.

There are no new Divisions or Appendices in this *Code*. However, the content of many of these has been revised and edited to take account of recent changes. This affects in particular Appendix I (Directory of International Registration Authorities), Appendix III (Places maintaining nomenclatural standards), Appendix V (Special denomination classes) and Appendix X which has been expanded to include not only guidance on trade designations, but also advice on the handling of Series for cultivars.

The Glossary has also been considerably revised and edited to ensure consistency and relevance to the text of the *Code*.

Whilst codes of nomenclature should remain bastions of stability for naming of plants, they do need to be updated in line with developing trends and practices that occur in the disciplines they serve, as well as to reflect problems that have occurred in the operation and interpretation of their rules. Whilst it is to be hoped that this edition will serve the users of cultivated plants for some years to come, the Commission always welcomes further suggestions for its future development.

C.D. Brickell. On behalf of the IUBS International Commission for the Nomenclature of Cultivated Plants.

October, 2015

COMPARISON BETWEEN THE 2009 *CODE* AND THIS EDITION

This key demonstrates how the various numbered Rules, Notes, Recommendations, and Divisions of the 2009 edition of this *Code* may be compared with the provisions of this edition. This does not necessarily indicate that the meanings or implications of the previous provisions remain unchanged.

2009	**2016**
Div II	Div II
1.1	1.1
1.2	1.3
1.3	1.4
1A.1	1A.1
2.1	2.1
2.1 Nt.1	2.1 Nt.1
2.2	2.2
2.2 Nt.2	2.2 Nt.2
2.2 Nt.3	2.2 Nt.3
2.2 Nt.4	2.2 Nt.4
2.3	2.3
2.4	2.5
2.5	2.6
2.6	2.7
2.7	2.8
2.8	2.9
2.9	2.10
2.10	2.11
2.11	2.11
2.12	2.12
2.13	2.13
2.14	2.14
2.15	2.15
2.16	2.16
2.17	2.17
2.18	2.18
2.19	2.19
2.19 Nt.5	2.19 Nt.6
2.20	2.20
2.21	2.21
2.22	2.22
2.23	2.23
3.1	3.1
3.2	3.2
3.3	3.3
3.3 Nt.1	3.3 Nt.1
3.3 Nt.2	3.3 Nt.2
3.4	3.4
3.5	3.5
4.1	4.1
4.1 Nt.1	4.1 Nt.1
4.1 Nt.2	4.1 Nt.2
4.2	4.2
4.3	4.3
4.4	4.4
5.1	5.1
6.1	6.1
6.2	6.2
6.2 Nt.1	6.2 Nt.1
6.3	6.3
6.4	6.4
6.5	6.5
7.1	7.1
8.1	8.1
8.1 Nt. 1	Deleted
8.1 Nt.2	8.1 Nt.1
8.2	8.1
8.3	8.2
8.4	8.3
8A.1	8A.1
9.1	9.1
9.1 Nt.1	9.1 Nt.1
9.2	9.2
10.1	10.1
10.1 Nt.1	10.1 Nt.1
11.1	11.1
11.2	11.3
11.2 Nt.1	13.2 Nt.1
11.3	11.4
11.4	11.5
11.5	11.6
11.6	11.7
11.7	11.8
11.8	11.9
12.1	12.1
13.1	13.1
13.2	13.2
13.2 Nt.1	13.2 Nt.2
14.1	14.1
14.1 Nt.1	14.1 Nt.1
14.1 Nt.2	14.1 Nt.2
14.2	14.2
14.3	14.3
15.1	15.1
15.2	15.2
15.3	15.3
16.1	16.1
16.2	16.2

16.3	16.3	21.22	21.22	24.5	24.5
16.4	16.4	21.23	21.23	24.6	24.6
17.1	17.1	21.24	21.24	25.1	25.1
17.2	17.2	21.25	21.25	25.1 Nt.1	25.1 Nt.1
17.3	17.3	21.25 Nt.3	21.25 Nt.4	25.1 Nt.2	25.1 Nt.2
17.3 Nt.1	17.3 Nt.1	21A.1	21A.1	25.2	25.2
18.1	18.1	21B.1	21B.1	25.3	25.3
18.2	18.2	21C.1	21C.1	25A.1	25A.1
18.3	18.3	21D.1	21D.1	25B.1	25B.1
19.1	19.1	21E.1	21E.1	25B.2	25.1 Nt.3 & 25C.1
19.2	19.2	21F.1	21F.1	25B.3	25C.2
19.3	19.3	21G.1	21G.1	26.1	26.1
20.1	20.1	21H.1	21H.1	26.2	26.2
20.2	20.2	21I.1	21I.1	26.2 Nt.1	26.2 Nt.1
21.1	21.1	21J.1	21J.1	26.3	26.3
21.2	21.2	21K.1	21K.1	26.4	26.4
21.2 Nt. 1	21.2 Nt. 1	22.1	22.1	26A.1	26A.1
21.3	21.3	22.1 Nt.1	22.1 Nt.1	27.1	27.1
21.4	21.4	22.2	22.2	27.2	27.2
21.5	21.5	22.3	22.3	27.3	27.3
21.6	21.6	22.4	22.4	27.4	27.4
21.6 Nt. 2	21.6 Nt. 2	22.5	22.5	27.5	27.5
21.7	21.7	22.6	22.6	27.5 Nt.1	27.5 Nt.1
21.8	21.8	22A.1	22A.1	27.6	27.6
21.9	21.9	23.1	23.1	27.6 Nt.2	27.6 Nt.2
21.10	21.10	23.2	23.2	27.7	27.7
21.11	21.11	23.3	23.3	27.8	27.8
21.12	21.12	23.4	23.4	27A.1	27A.1
21.13	21.13	23.5	23.5	27B.1	27B.1
21.14	21.14	23.5 Nt.1	23.5 Nt.1	27C.1	27C.1
21.15	21.15	23.5 Nt.2	23.5 Nt.2	27D.1	27D.1
21.16	21.16	23.5 Nt.3	23.5 Nt.3	27D.2	27D.2
21.17	21.17	23A.1	23A.1	27E.1	27E.1
21.18	21.18	24.1	24.1	27F.1	27F.1
21.19	21.19	24.2	24.2	27F.2	27F.2
21.20	21.20	24.3	24.3	27G.1	27G.1
21.21	21.21	24.4	24.4	27H.1	27H.1

28.1	28.1	34.1	34.1	Div III, 13	Div III, 13
28.2	28.2	34.1 Nt.1	34.1 Nt.1	Div III, 14	Div III, 14
28.3	28.3	34A.1	34A.1	Div IV	Div IV
28.4	28.4	34B.1	34B.1	Div IV, 1	Div IV, 1
28.5	28.5	34C.1	34C.1	Div IV, 2	Div IV, 2
28.6	28.6	34D.1	34D.1	Div IV, 3	Div IV, 3
28A.1	28A.1	34D.2	34D.2	Div IV, 4	Div IV, 4
29.1	29.1	35.1	35.1	Div IV, 5	Div IV, 5
29.2	29.2	35.2	35.2	Div IV, 6	Div IV, 6
29.3	29.3	35.3	35.3	Div IV, 7	Div IV, 7
29.4	29.4	35.4	35.4	Div IV, 8	Div IV, 8
29A.1	29A.1	35.5	35.5	Div V	Div V
30.1	30.1	35.6	35.6	Div V, 1	Div V, 1
30.1 Nt.1	30.1 Nt.1	35.7	35.7	Div V, 1 Nt.1	Div V, 1 Nt.1
30.2	30.2	35.8	35.8	Div V, 1 Nt.2	Div V, 1 Nt.3
30.3	30.3	35.9	35.9	Div V, 1 Nt.3	Div V, 1 Nt.4
30.4	30.4	35.10	35.10	Div V, 2	Div V, 2
30.5	30.5	35.11	35.11	Div V, 3	Div V, 3
31.1	31.1	35.12	35.12	Div V, 3 Nt.4	Div V, 3 Nt.5
31.2	31.2	35.13	35.13	Div V, 3 Nt.5	Div V, 3 Nt.6
31.3	31.3	35.14	35.14	Div V, 3 Nt.6	Div V, 3 Nt.7
31.4	31.4	35A.1	35A.1	Div V, 3 Nt.7	Div V, 3 Nt.8
31.5	31.5	35B.1	35B.1	Div V, 4	Div V, 4
31.6	31.6	Div III	Div III	Div V, 5	Div V, 5
31.7	31.7	Div III, 1	Div III, 1	Div V, 6	Div V, 6
31.8	31.8	Div III, 2	Div III, 2	Div V, 6 Nt.8	Div V, 6 Nt.9
31.8 Nt.1	31.8 Nt.1	Div III, 2 Nt.1	Div III, 2 Nt.1	Div V, 7	Div V, 7
32.1	32.1	Div III, 3	Div III, 3	Div V, 8	Div V, 8
32.1 Nt.1	32.1 Nt.1	Div III, 4	Div III, 4	Div V, 9	Div V, 9
32.2	32.2	Div III, 5	Div III, 5	Div V, 10	Div V, 10
32.2 Nt.2	32.2 Nt.2	Div III, 6	Div III, 6	Div V, 10 Nt.9	Div V, 10 Nt.11
32A.1	32A.1	Div III, 7	Div III, 7	Div V, 11	Div V, 11
33.1	33.1	Div III, 8	Div III, 8	Div V, 12	Div V, 12
33.1 Nt.1	33.1 Nt.1	Div III, 9	Div III, 9	Div V, 13	Div V, 13
33A.1	33A.1	Div III, 10	Div III, 10	Div V, 14	Div V, 14
33A.1 Nt.2	33A.1 Nt.2	Div III, 11	Div III, 11	Div VI	Div VI
33A.1 Nt.3	33A.1 Nt.3	Div III, 12	Div III, 12		

NEW PROVISIONS

The following are novel provisions appearing in Division II–VI of this edition.

ART
1.2
2.3 Nt.5
2.22 Nt.7
5.2
8.2 Nt.2
11.2
11.3 Nt.1
21.23 Nt.3
21L.1
21M.1
21N.1
22B.1
25.1 Nt.3
27D.3
34A.2
34A.3
34D.1 Nt.2
35.11 Nt.1
Div V, 1 Nt.1
Div V, 7 Nt.9

IMPORTANT DATES IN THIS *CODE*

Dates upon which particular provisions of this *Code* become effective.

The Rules in this *Code* are retroactive, except in the following specified cases. The date on the left is that upon which each Rule becomes effective.

1 May 1753	Art. 18.1
	Art. 18.3
2 January 1858	Art. 18.2
1 January 1900	Art. 25.2
1 January 1953	Art. 25.3
	Div III, 13
1 January 1959	Art. 21.6
	Art. 21.7
	Art. 21.11
	Art. 21.16
	Art. 21.22
	Art. 21.24
	Art. 26.1
	Art. 27.1
1 January 1973	Art. 25.3
	Div III, 13
1 January 1996	Art. 21.13
	Art. 21.17
	Art. 21.18
	Art. 21.20
	Art. 21.23
1 January 2004	Art. 21.15
	Art. 22.6
	Div V, 5
	Div V, 6
1 January 2010	Art. 23.5

PREVIOUS EDITIONS OF THIS *CODE*

1st	Published by the RHS as a booklet: 29 pp Stearn, W.T.	1953
2nd	*Regnum Vegetabile* **10**: 28 pp Fletcher, H.R., Gilmour, J.S.L., Lawrence, G.H.M., Little, Jr, E.L., Nilsson-Leissner, G. & de Vilmorin, R.	1958
3rd	*Regnum Vegetabile* **22**: 30 pp Fletcher, H.R., Gilmour, J.S.L., Lawrence, G.H.M., Matthews, J.D., Nilsson-Leissner, G. & de Vilmorin, R.	1961
4th	*Regnum Vegetabile* **64**: 32 pp Gilmour, J.S.L., Horne, F.R., Little Jr, E.L., Stafleu, F.A. & Richens, R.H.	1969
5th	*Regnum Vegetabile* **104**: 32 pp Brickell, C.D., Voss, E.G., Kelley, A.F., Schneider, F. & Richens, R.H.	1980
6th	*Regnum Vegetabile* **133**: 175 pp Trehane, P., Brickell, C.D., Baum, B.R., Hetterscheid, W.L.A., Leslie, A.C., McNeill, J., Spongberg, S.A. & Vrugtman, F.	1995
7th	*Acta Horticulturae* **647**: 123 pp *Regnum Vegetabile* **144** Brickell, C.D., Baum, B.R., Hetterscheid, W.L.A., Leslie, A.C., McNeill, J., Trehane, P., Vrugtman, F. & Wiersema, J.H.	2004
8th	*Scripta Horticulturae* **10**: 184 pp *Regnum Vegetabile* **151** Brickell, C.D., Alexander, C., David, J.C., Hetterscheid, W.L.A., Leslie, A.C., Malécot, V., Xiaobai, Jin & Cubey, J.J.	2009

INTERNATIONAL CODE OF NOMENCLATURE FOR CULTIVATED PLANTS

PREAMBLE

1. The disciplines of agriculture, forestry, and horticulture require a precise, stable, and simple system of naming plants that can be applied internationally. This system must deal with both the terms that denote the various categories of taxonomically distinguishable groups of plants (taxa, plural; taxon, singular) in cultivation and the formation of names for such groups.

The purpose of giving a name to a taxon is to supply a means of referring to it and to indicate to which category it is assigned, rather than to indicate its characters or history.

This *Code* aims to provide a stable method of naming taxa of cultivated plants[1], avoiding and rejecting the use of names that may cause error or ambiguity.

Next in importance is the maintenance of prevailing custom and the avoidance of the unnecessary creation of names. Other considerations, such as absolute grammatical correctness, regularity or euphony of epithets, regard for persons etc., notwithstanding their undeniable importance, are of less significance.

2. The Principles form the basis of the system in this *Code* for naming plants in cultivation.

3. The detailed provisions are divided into Rules, set out in the Articles, and Recommendations. Notes are provided to give ancillary information and Examples are added to the Rules and Recommendations to illustrate them.

4. The object of the Rules is to put names from the past in order and to provide for those of the future.

5. The Recommendations deal with subsidiary points, their object being to bring about greater uniformity and clarity, especially in future naming. Names contrary to a Recommendation may not, on that account, be rejected but, whenever possible, Recommendations should be followed.

6. The provisions regulating modification of this *Code* form its last Division.

7. The Rules and Recommendations apply to all organisms traditionally treated

[1] These are deliberately selected plants that may have arisen by intentional or accidental hybridization in cultivation, by selection from existing cultivated stocks, or from variants within wild populations or from genetically modified plants.

as plants (including algae and fungi) and whose origin or selection is primarily due to intentional human activity.

8. The only proper reasons for changing a name of a taxon are either a more profound knowledge of the facts resulting from adequate taxonomic study or the necessity of giving up a name that is contrary to the Rules of the *ICN* and *ICNCP*.

9. In the absence of a relevant Rule or where the consequences of Rules are doubtful, established custom is followed.

10. For the purposes of this *Code* the verb "write" is to be construed as covering all methods of presenting a name, whether hand-written, printed or electronic.

11. Translations of this *Code* are encouraged. In the event of any discrepancy, the original English version is considered correct.

12. This edition of the *Code* supersedes all previous editions.

DIVISION I: PRINCIPLES

PRINCIPLE 1

A precise, stable, and internationally recognized system for naming plants in cultivation is essential for international understanding and communication. The aim of this *Code*, the *International Code of Nomenclature for Cultivated Plants* (*ICNCP*), also known as the Cultivated Plant Code, is to promote uniformity, accuracy, and stability in the naming of agricultural, forestry, and horticultural plants.

PRINCIPLE 2

The *International Code of Nomenclature for algae, fungi, and plants* (*ICN*) governs the names in Latin form for algae, fungi, and plants, except for graft-chimaeric genera, which are entirely governed by this *Code*.

Taxa of plants whose origin or selection is primarily due to intentional human activity may be given names formed according to the provisions of this *Code*. With the exception of any Latin component within their names, the form of which is governed by the *ICN*, the nomenclature of names in the categories of cultivar, Group, and grex[1] is governed by this *Code* alone.

PRINCIPLE 3

The naming of taxa governed by this *Code* is based upon priority of publication. Each cultivar or Group with a particular circumscription and each grex with a particular parentage may bear only one accepted name: the earliest that is in accordance with the Rules, except as provided for within this *Code*.

PRINCIPLE 4

Names of plants governed by this *Code* must be universally and freely available for use by any person[2] to denote a taxon.

PRINCIPLE 5

This *Code* regulates the terminology to be used for categories of taxa governed by this *Code* and the names to be applied to those individual taxa.

Under some national and international legislation such as that providing for National Listing or Plant Breeders' Rights (Plant Variety Rights), names may be established for taxa of plants using terminology peculiar to such legislation. This *Code* does not

---

[1] Plants of this type are sometimes referred to as cultigens

[2] In using the word "person" in this *Code* we are adopting the legal definition which covers both the individual and the corporate body.

regulate the use of such terminology, their rules, or the formation of such names but recognizes that, under such legislation, these names take precedence over names formed under the provisions of this *Code*.

PRINCIPLE 6

While the use of trade designations as marketing devices in addition to properly established names of taxa of plants is acknowledged in this *Code*, the formation of such designations is not regulated under this *Code*.

Plants are sometimes marketed using trademarks. Such trademarks are the intellectual property of an individual or corporate body and are not therefore freely available for any person to use; consequently, they cannot be considered as names as defined in this *Code*.

PRINCIPLE 7

The formation and use of common names of plants are not regulated by this *Code*.

PRINCIPLE 8

International registration of cultivar, Group, and grex names and the publication and promotion of lists of such names are of the greatest importance for promoting uniformity, accuracy, and stability in the naming of cultivated plants.

PRINCIPLE 9

The selection, preservation, and publication of designations of nomenclatural standards is important in stabilizing the application of cultivar and Group names. Particular names are attached to nomenclatural standards to make clear the precise application of the names and to help avoid duplication of such names. Although not a requirement for the establishment of a name, the designation of such standards is strongly encouraged.

PRINCIPLE 10

This *Code* has no force beyond that deriving from the free assent of those concerned with the naming of cultivated plants. However, the Rules and Recommendations of this *Code* should be endorsed and applied by all those responsible for the formation and use of names for cultivated plants.

PRINCIPLE 11

The provisions of this *Code* are retroactive unless stated otherwise.

DIVISION II: RULES AND RECOMMENDATIONS

CHAPTER I: GENERAL PROVISIONS

ARTICLE 1: RELATIONSHIP WITH THE *INTERNATIONAL CODE OF NOMENCLATURE FOR ALGAE, FUNGI, AND PLANTS* (*ICN*)

1.1. Plants in cultivation may be named in accordance with the *International Code of Nomenclature for algae, fungi, and plants* (*ICN*) at least to the level of genus, or to the level of species or below.

1.2. Notwithstanding Art. 1.1, the names of graft-chimaeric genera are entirely governed by this *Code*.

1.3. Plants in cultivation meeting the criteria of being recognized in the categories of cultivar, Group, or grex may be given epithets in accordance with this *Code* and assigned to a named taxon under the *ICN* or a named graft-chimaeric genus under this *Code* (see also Art. 21.2, Art. 22.1, and Art. 23.1).

1.4. Hybrids between taxa, including, if it is so wished, those arising in cultivation, may receive names as provided in Appendix I of the *ICN* ("Names of hybrids"; see also Division III of this *Code*). Alternatively, or in addition, cultivated plants arising through hybridization may be named as cultivars, Groups, or grexes under the provisions of this *Code*.

Ex. 1. *Solanum* × *procurrens* is the name, under the *ICN*, for the hybrid between the European *S. nigrum* and the South American *S. physalifolium* that occurred on cultivated ground in the United Kingdom.

Ex. 2. *Hypericum* × *inodorum* is the name, under the *ICN*, for hybrids between *H. androsaemum* and *H. hircinum* that occur where the two species meet both in the wild and in cultivation. Cultivars and Groups may be assigned to this hybrid name if desired.

Ex. 3. *Lycaste* × *smeeana* (*L. deppei* × *L. skinneri*) is a naturally occurring hybrid; *Calanthe* × *dominyi* (*C. masuca* × *C. triplicata*) is a hybrid that arose in cultivation.

Ex. 4. The progeny of the repeated cross between *Victoria amazonica* and *V. cruziana* with *V. amazonica* as the pollen parent fit the criteria of cultivar (Art. 2.3) and have received the name *V.* 'Longwood Hybrid'; likewise the progeny of the cross with *V. cruziana* as the pollen parent and which are consistently distinct from progeny of the former cross have been named *V.* 'Adventure' (see *Pond & Garden* 1(4): 20–23. 1999). These hybrids have not been named under the provisions of the *ICN*.

Recommendation 1A

1A.1. Plants in cultivation that meet the criteria of being recognized in the categories of cultivar, Group, or grex should be named in accordance with the provisions of this *Code*, not under the provisions of the *ICN*.

CHAPTER II: DEFINITIONS

ARTICLE 2: THE CULTIVAR

2.1. The basic category[1] of cultivated plants whose nomenclature is governed by this *Code* is the cultivar. The Rules for forming names in this category are laid out in Art. 21 of this *Code*.

Note 1. The ranks *varietas* (var.) and *forma* (f.), recognized by the *ICN*, are not equivalent to cultivar and these terms must not be automatically treated as equivalent terms for "cultivar".

2.2. The English words "variety", "form", and "strain" or their equivalents in other languages must not be used for the word "cultivar" when fulfilling the Articles of this *Code* nor in translations of this *Code*.

Note 2. The words "variety" in English, "variété" in French, "variedad" in Spanish, "variedade" in Portuguese, "varietà" in Italian, "ras" in Dutch, "Sorte" in German, "sort" in Scandinavian languages, "sort" ("сорт") in Russian, "pinzhong" ("品种" in simplified form, and "品種" in traditional form)" in Chinese, "hinshu" ("品種") in Japanese, and corresponding terms in other languages, have been used as common equivalents to the word "cultivar".

Note 3. The words "form" (in the sense of cultivated or garden form) in English, "Form" in German, "forme" in French, "forma" in Spanish, etc., are sometimes used as common equivalents to the word "cultivar".

Note 4. Notwithstanding Art. 2.2, in certain national and international legislation or other legal conventions the word "variety" or its equivalent in other languages is a statutory or otherwise legal term used to denominate a proven variant that is distinct, uniform, and stable and is exactly equivalent to the word "cultivar" as defined in this *Code*.

2.3. A cultivar, as a taxon, is an assemblage of plants that *(a)* has been selected for a particular character or combination of characters, and *(b)* remains distinct, uniform, and stable in these characters when propagated by appropriate means (but see Art. 9.1 Note 1).

Note 5. Although it is highly desirable that a plant to be designated as a cultivar should be propagated before being named, exceptionally it may be published when only one individual exists (but see Art. 2.5).

2.4 A taxon no longer recognized at the rank of species or below under the *ICN*

[1] As defined in this *Code* a category is a division in a system of classification. In this *Code* there are three categories: cultivar, Group and grex, which should not necessarily be hierarchically limited.

may be designated as a cultivar, if such a designation is considered of utility and appropriate (see Art. 21.5 Ex. 10).

2.5. Cultivars differ in their mode of origin and reproduction, for example as described in Art. 2.6–2.19. Whatever the means of propagation, only those plants which maintain the characters that define a particular cultivar may be included within that cultivar.

2.6. Plants of the same clone (which are asexually propagated from any part of a plant) may form a cultivar.

Ex. 1. *Asparagus officinalis* 'Calet', *Fraxinus pennsylvanica* 'Newport', *Gerbera* 'Delphi', *Salix alba* 'Lievelde', *Salix matsudana* 'Tortuosa', *Solanum tuberosum* 'Wilja', *Syringa vulgaris* 'Andenken an Ludwig Späth', and *Tulipa* 'Apeldoorn' are clonal cultivars.

2.7. Plants of a topophysic clone (which are asexually derived from particular parts of a plant) may form a cultivar.

Ex. 2. *Abies amabilis* 'Spreading Star' and *Abies koreana* 'Prostrate Beauty' were derived from lateral branching growth of the parent plants.

2.8. Plants of a cyclophysic clone (which are asexually derived from a particular phase of a plant's growth cycle) may form a cultivar.

Ex. 3. *Ficus binnendijkii* cultivars 'Amstel King', 'Amstel Queen', and 'Alii' all represent juvenile forms of the species with lanceolate leaves, whereas the adult form has elliptic leaves; *Chamaecyparis lawsoniana* 'Ellwoodii' was derived from juvenile cutting material; *Hedera helix* 'Arborescens' was derived from adult cutting material.

2.9. Plants of a clone which are derived from aberrant growth may form a cultivar.

Ex. 4. *Picea abies* 'Little Gem' is a dwarf plant derived from propagation of a witches' broom found on *P. abies* 'Nidiformis', itself a witches' broom found on a plant of *P. abies*.

2.10. Plants with characters wholly or partly derived from the presence of an intracellular organism may form a cultivar.

Ex. 5. *Syringa* 'Charisma' is a cultivar derived from propagation of a witches' broom on *Syringa* 'Royalty' caused by a phytoplasma. The characters used to distinguish *Iris unguicularis* 'Kilndown' are caused by the presence of a stable potyvirus.

2.11. Plants of the same chimaera (mutation-chimaera or graft-chimaera) may form a cultivar. (see also Art. 5.1 and 5.2).

Ex. 6. *Acer platanoides* 'Drummondii', *Daphne* × *burkwoodii* 'Carol Mackie', *Filipendula ulmaria* 'Variegata', *Ilex myrtifolia* 'Aurea', *Juniperus chinensis* 'Plumosa Aureovariegata', *Pelargonium* 'Freak of Nature', potato 'Red Craigs Royal', *Salvia officinalis* 'Tricolor', *Spiraea japonica* 'Anthony Waterer', and *Vinca major* 'Variegata' are chimaeras whose characteristics are effected by a proportion of mutant tissue.

Ex. 7. The graft-chimaera + *Crataegomespilus* 'Dardarii' combines the tissues of *Crataegus monogyna* and *Mespilus germanica*; *Syringa* 'Correlata' combines the tissues of *S.* × *chinensis* and *S. vulgaris*.

2.12. An assemblage of individual plants grown from seed derived from uncontrolled pollination may form a cultivar when it meets the criteria laid down in Art. 2.3 and when it can be distinguished consistently by one or more characters even though the individual plants of the assemblage may not necessarily be genetically uniform.

Ex. 8. *Ballota nigra* 'Archer's Variety', *Delphinium* 'Astolat', *Geum* 'Lady Stratheden', *Lavatera* 'Ice Cool', *Milium effusum* 'Aureum', *Verbena hastata* 'Rosea', and *Viola* 'Penny Black' are cultivars which are propagated from seed.

Ex. 9. When seed is sown of the yellow-fruited cultivar *Viburnum opulus* 'Xanthocarpum', a proportion of the resulting seedlings is indistinguishable from the parent plant; such progeny is to be treated as being part of the same cultivar.

Ex. 10. The seed-raised *Betula pendula* 'Penla', *Hippophae rhamnoides* 'Ram', *Larix kaempferi* 'Palsgård Velling', and *Rosa carolina* 'Indabes' were selected from plants from known geographical sources.

2.13. An assemblage of plants grown from seed collected from a particular provenance on more than one occasion and clearly distinguishable by one or more characters (a topovariant) may form a cultivar.

Ex. 11. If considered distinguishable, plants such as *Picea abies* of Dutch provenance Gortel-1, *Syringa vulgaris* of a white-flowered Swedish seed source called Veberöd, or *Eucalyptus camaldulensis* selected from especially fast-growing populations, could be treated as cultivars.

2.14. Plants of a line (which results from repeated self-fertilization or inbreeding) may form a cultivar.

Ex. 12. *Beta vulgaris* 'SP6 926-0', *Helianthus annuus* 'HA306', *Lactuca sativa* 'Kagraner Sommer', *Phaseolus vulgaris* 'Contender', *Triticum aestivum* 'Marquis', and *Zea mays* 'Wisconsin 153' are all lines.

2.15. Plants of a multiline (which is made up from several closely related lines) may form a cultivar.

Ex. 13. *Agropyron intermedium* 'Clarke', *Asparagus officinalis* 'Lucullus', *Glycine max* 'Jupiter-R', *Lotus corniculatus* 'Cree', *Macroptilium atropurpureum* 'Aztec', and *Trifolium repens* 'Star' are all multilines.

2.16. Plants of the same F_1 hybrid (the result of a deliberate repeatable single cross between two pure-bred lines) may form a cultivar.

Ex. 14. *Brassica oleracea* 'King Arthur', *Capsicum annuum* 'Delight', and *Sorghum bicolor* 'Texas 610' are all F_1 hybrids.

2.17. Plants that have arisen as the result of a change in ploidy level may form a cultivar.

Ex. 15. *Lilium* 'Tetra Brandywine' is a tetraploid (2n=48) clone derived from the diploid *L.* 'Brandywine' (2n=24), with larger flowers, thicker tepals and sturdier stems.

2.18. Agamospermous plants, including those F_1 hybrids that retain their genetic composition and characteristics through the second generation and beyond as a result of agamospermous reproduction, may form cultivars.

Ex. 16. *Cenchrus ciliaris* 'Higgins', *Eragrostis curvula* 'Catalina', *Poa pratensis* 'Baron' and *Hypericum perforatum* 'Topaz' are agamospermous cultivars; the agamospermous hybrids resulting from crossing plants of *Tripsacum dactyloides* that carry an agamospermous trait with plants of *Zea mays* may be given a cultivar name.

2.19. An assemblage of genetically modified plants that demonstrates new characters following the deliberate implantation of genetic material from a different germplasm may form a cultivar.

Note 6. In practice, such an assemblage is often marketed from one or more lines or multilines that have been genetically modified. These lines or multilines often remain in a constant state of development which makes the naming of such an assemblage as a cultivar a futile exercise. Generally, these assemblages are marketed under trademarks.

2.20. In considering whether two or more plants belong to the same or different cultivars, their origins are irrelevant. Plants that cannot be distinguished from others by any of the means currently adopted for cultivar determination in the group concerned are treated as one cultivar.

Ex. 17. Some plants derived from branch sports of *Pittosporum* 'Garnettii' are indistinguishable and therefore belong to a single cultivar, even though these sports have occurred at different times in different locations. *Pittosporum* 'Margaret Turnbull', which originated in New Zealand, appears to be identical with *P*. 'John Flanagan' from Ireland. The International Cultivar Registration Authority for *Pittosporum* designated *P*. 'Margaret Turnbull' as the accepted name, with *P*. 'John Flanagan' as a later synonym.

Ex. 18. *Dianthus* 'William Sim' produces distinguishable mutants that by further mutation give rise to a range of variants, some of which are indistinguishable from *D*. 'William Sim'.

2.21. If a change in the method of propagation of a cultivar leads to a change in the set of characters by which it is distinguished, the plants so produced are not regarded as belonging to the same cultivar.

Ex. 19. The double-flowered *Campanula trachelium* 'Bernice' is usually vegetatively propagated. If grown from seed, it may produce a wide range of plants varying in height, degree of doubling, and colour. Such seed-raised plants are not to be considered the same as, nor be named as, *Campanula trachelium* 'Bernice' unless the individual plants cannot be distinguished from this cultivar.

Ex. 20. *Cereus hildmannianus* 'Monstrosus' is a teratological form of a cactus that is generally increased from cuttings. However, on sowing seed, a proportion of seedlings show the same monstrose condition. Whichever way propagation is carried out, the same name is to be applied to the monstrose plants that form the cultivar. The non-monstrose plants are treated as indistinguishable parts of the species.

Ex. 21. *Hosta* 'Halcyon' is usually propagated by division, yet when increased by micropropagation a number of mutants may be generated; one of these has been isolated and multiplied to form the cultivar *H.* 'June'.

2.22. If a rootstock is a cultivar, it is to be named accordingly. Plants produced as the result of grafting a single scion or scions of a single cultivar onto a rootstock, or interstem, take the name of the scion cultivar. Where scions of different cultivars are grafted onto the same rootstock, or interstem, each scion retains its own name.

Ex. 22. *Malus domestica* 'James Grieve' grafted onto the rootstock known as *M. domestica* 'M9' retains the epithet 'James Grieve', despite the dwarfing effect induced by this particular rootstock.

Ex. 23. *Pyrus communis* 'Merton Pride' grafted onto the quince rootstock *Cydonia oblonga* 'Malling C' retains the name *Pyrus communis* 'Merton Pride', despite the semi-dwarfing effect induced by this rootstock of a different genus.

Ex. 24. When a cultivar of *Corylus avellana* (European hazel) is grafted onto a stock of *C. colurna* (Turkish hazel), the resulting plant is regarded as being that cultivar of *C. avellana*.

Ex. 25. *Malus domestica* 'Discovery', *M. domestica* 'Charles Ross' and *M. domestica* 'James Grieve' grafted onto the same rootstock are still considered distinct cultivars and so retain their names

Ex. 26. When chlorophyll-less cultivars of *Gymnocalycium*, such as *G.* 'Rosebud', *G.* 'Hibotan' and *G.* 'Black Cap', are grafted onto *Hylocereus undatus* they retain their original names.

Note 7. Where a collective name has been given to a plant composed of scions of different cultivars on a single rootstock, this is to be regarded as a trade designation (see Appendix X).

2.23. Plants whose characteristics are maintained solely by regular practices of cultivation (covariants) are not to be considered as distinct cultivars.

Ex. 27. Apples trained as espaliers retain the same names as those which are tree-grown; topiary specimens of *Buxus sempervirens*, including its cultivars, may not receive new cultivar names; bonsai plants retain the names of the plants from which they were derived.

ARTICLE 3: THE GROUP

3.1. The formal category which may comprise cultivars, individual plants or combinations thereof on the basis of defined character-based similarity is the Group. The Rules for forming Group names are laid out in Art. 22 of this *Code*.

3.2. Criteria for forming and maintaining a Group vary according to the required purposes of particular users. All members of a Group must share the character(s) by which that Group is defined.

Ex. 1. In *Primula*, the cultivars 'MacWatt's Blue', 'Old Irish Scented', and 'Osborne

Green' are best cultivated under similar outdoor conditions and have been assembled under *Primula* Border Auricula Group (see B. Hyatt, *Auriculas* 86. 1989).

Ex. 2. *Iris* Dutch Group has been designated to include the complex of early flowering cultivars arising mainly from *I. tingitana*, *I. xiphium* var. *lusitanica*, and *I. xiphium* var. *praecox* (see *International Checklist for Hyacinths and Miscellaneous Bulbs* 301. 1991).

Ex. 3. The cultivars of *Festuca rubra* have been allocated to three Groups, Hexaploid Non-creeping Group, Hexaploid Creeping Group, and Octoploid Creeping Group, each with a distinct set of characters (see R. Duyvendak *et al*., *Rasen Turf Gazon* 3: 53–62. 1981).

3.3. A taxon previously recognized as a species or lower rank under the *ICN* may be designated as a Group, if such a designation is considered more appropriate and has utility.

Ex. 4. *Rhododendron boothii* Mishmiense Group is based on *R. mishmiense*, a species now generally placed in the synonymy of *R. boothii* but which nonetheless represents a recognizable component of the variation within *R. boothii* that continues to have horticultural value (see The Royal Horticultural Society, *An Alphabetical Checklist of Rhododendron Species* 1981).

Ex. 5. If *Hosta fortunei* is no longer recognized as a species, the epithet "fortunei" may be used to form *H*. Fortunei Group, if it is thought that individual cultivars and plants previously assigned to that species continue to need to be so assembled.

Ex. 6. If *Brassica oleracea* var. *sabauda* (published by Linnaeus in 1753) is no longer recognized as an infraspecific taxon at the rank of *varietas* (var.) within the species, it may be referred to as *Brassica oleracea* Sabauda Group.

Note 1. Authors may have used other designations such as "sort", "type", "selections", or "hybrids" as terms equivalent to the word "Group"; such terms are to be replaced by the word "Group".

Ex. 7. *Brachyglottis* Dunedin Hybrids was described (under *Senecio*) by D.L. Clarke (Bean, *Trees and Shrubs Hardy in the British Isles*, ed. 8, 4: 350. 1980) to cover a miscellany of similar plants derived from hybridization of a number of species of doubtful taxonomic status. If the progeny is recognized as forming a Group, the name is to be written as *Brachyglottis* Dunedin Group.

Ex. 8. *Lilium* Darkest Red Selections (originating pre 1996), when recognized as a Group, becomes *Lilium* Darkest Red Group.

Note 2. In the traditional ornamental horticulture of Japan, distinctive classes based on habit, leaf, flower, or fruit characteristics have been called gei (芸 or 藝). Although a gei has not traditionally been used in cultivar grouping, an assemblage of cultivars with a particular gei may be designated as a Group. Although the word "gei" is not usually incorporated within the epithet, the word "Group" may be added.

Ex. 9. Among cultivated forms of *Neofinetia falcata* are the gei Hariba, Mameba, Shiro-fukurin and Tora-fu which differ in the form and marking of their leaves. Each of these gei contains numerous named selections, some of which have been in cultivation for centuries. If these gei are recognized as Groups, they are to be written *Neofinetia falcata* Hariba Group, *N. falcata* Mameba Group, *N. falcata* Shiro-fukurin Group, and *N. falcata* Tora-fu Group respectively.

3.4. A member of one Group may also be a member of one or more other Groups if this has a practical purpose.

Ex. 10. *Solanum tuberosum* 'Desiree' may be designated part of a Maincrop Group and a Red-skinned Group since both such designations may be practical to buyers of potatoes. It may thus be written *Solanum tuberosum* (Maincrop Group) 'Desiree' in one classification or as *Solanum tuberosum* (Red-skinned Group) 'Desiree' in another, depending on the purpose of the classification used.

3.5. When a Group is divided or when two or more Groups are united or when the circumscription of a Group is otherwise significantly re-defined in such a way that the resulting Group no longer has the same circumscription a new name must be given for the resulting Group(s).

Ex. 11. In *Ex. 10*, *Solanum tuberosum* Maincrop Group and *S. tuberosum* Red-skinned Group may be united to form a re-circumscribed *Solanum tuberosum* Maincrop Red-skinned Group.

Ex. 12. *Tulipa* Dutch Breeders Group and *T.* English Breeders Group were united into the newly circumscribed *T.* Breeders Group (see J.F.Ch. Dix, *A Classified List of Tulip Names* 4. 1958).

Ex. 13. Recent breeding programmes in *Begonia* have led to the recognition of separate Groups within the existing Elatior Group. In due course these may be given new Group names instead of being referred to the Elatior Group as currently circumscribed.

Ex. 14. In the 1950s, a number of *Magnolia* hybrids were developed by D.T. Gresham and these have been referred to as Gresham Hybrids or as the Gresham Group. The inclusion of these hybrids in such a Group is unsatisfactory, the Group name being merely a statement of origin with individual members not showing characters in common. Two distinct Groups of Gresham's hybrids have, however, been recognized as Svelte Brunette Group and Buxom Nordic Blonde Group, each of which has a distinct set of characteristics (see J.M. Gardiner, *Magnolias* 118–120. 1989).

ARTICLE 4: THE GREX

4.1. The formal category for assembling plants based solely on specified parentage is the grex. It may only be used in orchid nomenclature. The rules for forming grex names are laid out in Art. 23 of this *Code*.

Note 1. In current usage the parents of a grex are restricted to the rank of species or another grex (but see also Art. 27.4).

Note 2. A grex name applies to a cross and its reciprocal.

Ex. 1. The grex name for the cross *Paphiopedilum* Atlantis grex × *P.* Lucifer grex is *P.* Sorel grex. It is also the name for the reciprocal cross.

4.2. One or more Groups may be formed within a grex (see Art. 3.1).

4.3. When the name of one or more of the component parents of a grex is

considered to be a synonym of another, a new name for the grex is not to be established, but the earliest established name for the same grex is to be used.

Ex. 2. *Dendrobium ostrinoglossum* has been reduced to synonymy under *D. lasianthera*. The grex *D.* Soo Chee established in 1985 with the stated parentage *D.* Caesar grex × *D. lasianthera* becomes a synonym of *D.* Alan Mann grex which was established in 1970 with the stated parentage *D.* Caesar grex × *D. ostrinoglossum*.

4.4. When the name of one or more parents of a grex is changed for any other nomenclatural or taxonomic reason other than that covered by Art. 4.3, a new grex name is not to be established but the parentage of the grex is re-stated.

Ex. 3. × *Renades* Arunoday grex was published with the stated parentage *Aerides multiflorum* × *Renanthera imschootiana*. If *Aerides roseum* is considered distinct from *A. multiflorum* and if one of the parents of the grex is then assigned to *A. roseum*, the stated parentage is changed to *A. roseum* × *R. imschootiana* (see *Orchid Rev. Suppl.* 110: 64. July 2002).

ARTICLE 5: THE CHIMAERA

5.1. A graft-chimaera is a plant that results from grafting the vegetative tissues of two or more plants belonging to different taxa, and is thus not a sexual hybrid. Rules for the formation of names of graft-chimaeras at the rank of genus are laid out in Art. 24 of this *Code*. Graft-chimaeras below the rank of genus may be recognized as cultivars (Art. 2.11 and Art. 24.4–24.6).

5.2 A mutation-chimaera is a plant which has one or more mutant tissues in intimate association with normal tissue. Mutation-chimaeras may be recognized as cultivars (see Art. 2.11).

ARTICLE 6: THE DENOMINATION CLASS

6.1. A denomination class is the unit within which the use of a cultivar, Group, or grex epithet may not be duplicated except when re-use of an epithet is permitted in accordance with Art. 30 (but see also Art. 6.5 and Art. 21.7).

6.2. A denomination class under the provisions of this *Code* is a single genus or hybrid genus unless a special denomination class has been determined by the ISHS Special Commission for Cultivar Registration (see Appendix V for the list of current denomination classes that are not a single genus or hybrid genus).

Ex. 1. *Hibiscus rosa-sinensis* has been designated as a denomination class. Although a cultivar epithet may not be repeated in that species, it may be used once in the remainder of the genus which forms a second denomination class.

Ex. 2. Because plants of the genera in the tribe *Hylocereeae* within the family *Cactaceae* are known to hybridize freely and because the taxonomic status of those genera is uncertain, the ISHS Commission for Nomenclature and Cultivar Registration has designated *Hylocereeae* as the denomination class for this group of cacti.

Note 1. Notwithstanding Art. 6.2, statutory plant registration authorities sometimes define their own denomination classes for the purposes of particular national or international legislation. Such classes are usually used by those statutory authorities for the same purposes as denomination classes as defined in this *Code*.

6.3. When a denomination class is divided, or when two or more denomination classes are united, or the limits of a denomination class are changed in any way, the new denomination class(es) is to be announced and published by the appropriate International Cultivar Registration Authority following approval by the ISHS Special Commission for Cultivar Registration.

6.4. When a denomination class comprising a single taxon whose nomenclature is governed by the *ICN* is divided or when two or more such denomination classes are united, the Rules of the *ICN* apply (*ICN*, Art. 11.3) unless a special denomination class is established under the provisions of Art. 6.2.

Ex. 3. It has been proposed that the genera *Gaultheria* (validly published in 1753) and *Pernettya* (validly published in 1825) be united. If this proposal is accepted, the combined denomination class must be *Gaultheria* which has priority in publication.

Ex. 4. If the segregation of *Lycianthes* and *Lycopersicon* from *Solanum* is accepted, two new denomination classes are automatically created unless it is decided that all three genera be considered part of the same special denomination class under the provisions of Art. 6.2.

6.5. Notwithstanding Art. 6.1, in orchids only, if a cultivar name has been established for more than one cultivar within a denomination class but within different species or grexes, the cultivar epithet must be associated with the name of the species or grex to which it applies.

Ex. 5. The epithet 'Saint Thomas' has been applied to a cultivar of both *Lycaste aromatica* and *L.* Wyld Spirit grex; the names must be written *Lycaste aromatica* 'Saint Thomas' and *Lycaste* Wyld Spirit grex 'Saint Thomas' respectively and not simply as *Lycaste* 'Saint Thomas'.

ARTICLE 7: PUBLICATION

7.1. Publication is effected in accordance with Art. 25.

ARTICLE 8: NAMES AND EPITHETS

8.1. The name of a cultivar or Group consists of a combination of the name of the genus or lower taxon to which it is assigned with a cultivar or Group epithet (see

Art. 21.1 and Art. 22.1). The name of a grex consists of the name of the genus to which it is assigned together with the grex epithet. These names may be written in several ways.

Ex. 1. *Fragaria* 'Cambridge Favourite', *Fragaria* × *ananassa* 'Cambridge Favourite', strawberry 'Cambridge Favourite', 'Cambridge Favourite' strawberry, Erdbeere 'Cambridge Favourite' (in German), fraisier 'Cambridge Favourite' (in French), and 'Cambridge Favourite' morangueiro (in Portuguese) are names for the same cultivar.

Ex. 2. *Alcea rosea* Chater's Double Group, *Alcea* Chater's Double Group, hollyhock Chater's Double Group, rose trémière Groupe Chater's Double (in French), Stockrose Chaters Doppelte Gruppe (in German), and stokroos Chaters Dubbele Groep (in Dutch) are names for the same Group.

Note 1. Anyone using a trademark in marketing a cultivar should be aware of the risk of the trademark becoming generic[1] unless an accepted or adopted name is also given for the cultivar. The trademark should always be accompanied by an accepted or adopted name (see Art. 17.2 and Appendix X).

Ex. 3. *Spiranthes* Awful grex, lady's tresses Awful gx, schroeforchis Awful grex (in Dutch), and Drehwurz Awful grex (in German) are names for the same grex.

8.2. Epithets in the names of cultivars, Groups, and grexes are to be written in such a way so as to demonstrate the category to which they are assigned (Art. 14–16).

Ex. 4 *Iris* 'Cantab' is a cultivar, *Begonia* Elatior Group is a Group, and *Paphiopedilum* Sorel gx is a grex.

Note 2. See Appendix X for the recommended styling of trade designations.

8.3. Epithets in the names of cultivars, Groups, and grexes are formed according to the provisions of Art. 21, Art. 22, and Art. 23 respectively.

Recommendation 8A

8A.1. Epithets in names of cultivars, Groups, and grexes should be distinguished typographically from names of the taxa to which they are assigned. For example, they should not be presented in italic typeface if the widespread convention of using italics for names of genera and lower taxa, whose nomenclature is governed by the *ICN*, is adopted in the work.

Ex. 5. *Aconitum napellus* subsp. *lobelianum* 'Bergfürst' and *Chamaecyparis lawsoniana* 'Silver Queen' should not be presented as *Aconitum napellus* subsp. *lobelianum 'Bergfürst'* or *Chamaecyparis lawsoniana 'Silver Queen'*.

Ex. 6. *Brassica oleracea* Gemmifera Group should not be presented as *Brassica oleracea Gemmifera Group*.

Ex. 7. *Bletilla* Penway Dragon grex should not be presented as *Bletilla Penway Dragon grex*.

[1] Not restricted to a class of goods from a particular source.

ARTICLE 9: DATE OF A NAME

9.1. The date of the name of a cultivar, Group, grex, or graft-chimaeric genus is that of its establishment (see Art. 27). When the various conditions for establishment are not fulfilled simultaneously, the date of the name is that on which the final condition was fulfilled.

> *Note 1.* No assemblage of plants can be regarded as a cultivar or Group until its category, name, and circumscription have been published. For a grex its name, category, and parentage must be published. For a graft-chimaeric genus its name and parentage must be published.

9.2. Correction of the original spelling of names governed by this *Code* (Art. 35.3) does not affect the date of that name.

ARTICLE 10: ESTABLISHED NAMES

10.1. An established name is one that is in accordance with Art. 27 of this *Code*.

> *Note 1.* A name that is established under the Rules of this *Code* might not be in conformity with the requirements of local legislation (see also Art. 31.2).

ARTICLE 11: ACCEPTED NAMES

11.1. The accepted name is the earliest established one (Art. 27.1) that must be used for a cultivar, Group, grex, or graft-chimaeric genus under the Rules of this *Code* (but see Art. 11.3, Art. 11.4–11.6 and Art. 29.2).

11.2. For the purposes of this *Code* a synonym is an established name (Art. 10.1) that is not the accepted (Art. 11.1) or adopted name (Art. 11.3).

11.3. Notwithstanding Art. 11.1, if an accepted cultivar name becomes rejected and replaced with a new name by a statutory plant registration authority, or is otherwise replaced by a name designated by such an authority, the earlier accepted name becomes a synonym of the newer name. The statutory name becomes the adopted name for the cultivar.

> *Note 1.* The rules governing the formation of cultivar epithets (or variety denominations) as employed by statutory plant registration authorities may differ from those in this *Code*.

11.4. A name designated in a statutory register remains the accepted or adopted name even after the lapse of the statutory protection for the plant concerned.

Ex. 1. EU Plant Breeders' Rights Grant No 18698 was granted to *Argyranthemum* 'Ohmadsant'; even though the Grant was surrendered in August 2007, this name remains the accepted name for the cultivar. It has been sold as *Argyranthemum* SANTANA 'Ohmadsant'.

11.5. Notwithstanding Art. 11.1, a Group may have more than one accepted name (see Art. 32.2).

Ex. 2. *Fagus sylvatica* Purple-leaved Group and *Brassica oleracea* Brussels Sprout Group or names with equivalent epithets in any language other than Latin may be used as alternatives to *F. sylvatica* Atropunicea Group and *B. oleracea* Gemmifera Group.

11.6. A name that is contrary to the Rules of this *Code* yet which has become widely used may be designated an accepted name if the appropriate International Cultivar Registration Authority *(a)* publishes the basis for its decision, and *(b)* sends a copy of that publication to the IUBS International Commission for the Nomenclature of Cultivated Plants (see Art. 19.1).

Ex. 3. *Chamaecyparis lawsoniana* 'Green Pillar' is a later name (1960) for C. *lawsoniana* 'Jackman's Variety' (1947) and has entered general use to such an extent that the International Cultivar Registration Authority for conifers designated the later name as the accepted name. The basis for that decision was published in the *International Conifer Register* 3: 89. 1992.

11.7. Notwithstanding Art. 11.6, if an appropriate International Cultivar Registration Authority does not exist, or is unwilling to make a proposal, anyone may publish a proposal to accept a name that is contrary to the Rules of this *Code* if such a name is in widespread use. That published proposal (cf. Art. 25) must be remitted to the IUBS International Commission for the Nomenclature of Cultivated Plants for a ruling on whether such a name is to be conserved (see Art. 19.1).

Ex. 4. The names *Dieffenbachia* 'Exotica Perfecta Compacta' and *D.* 'Compacta' refer to the same cultivar, the latter being more recent. Since the first name is often inaccurately written, it has led to confusion with the cultivars *D.* 'Exotica' and *D.* 'Exotica Perfecta'. Furthermore, the name is often written as *Dieffenbachia* 'Exotica Compacta'. It has been proposed that the later name *D.* 'Compacta' be the accepted name in order to avoid such ambiguity (see Hetterscheid and van Vliet, *Vakbl. Bloem*. 42(50): 32–37. 1987).

11.8. An International Cultivar Registration Authority may also designate a name as accepted if *(a)* selecting a competing name from those already in use (Art. 29.2–29.3), or *(b)* permitting re-use of a name (Art. 30.2).

11.9. If there is an objection to a designation made under Art. 11.6 or Art. 11.8 or a proposal made under Art. 11.7, application may be made to the IUBS International Commission for the Nomenclature of Cultivated Plants for a definitive ruling (see Art. 19.1).

ARTICLE 12: CONSERVED NAMES

12.1. A conserved name is one that, although otherwise contrary to the Rules of this *Code*, must be used for a cultivar, Group, or grex by a ruling of the IUBS International Commission for the Nomenclature of Cultivated Plants (see Art. 19).

ARTICLE 13: TRADE DESIGNATIONS

13.1. A trade designation is not a name regulated under this *Code* but is a device that has been used for marketing a cultivar, Group, or grex in place of or in addition to its accepted or adopted name or names (Art. 2.19, Note 6; Art. 2.22, Note 7; Art. 11.1. See also Appendix X).

Ex. 1. In 1988, UK Plant Breeders' Rights Grant No 3743 was issued for a rose with the cultivar epithet 'Korlanum'. The cultivar is marketed as "rose Surrey", "Rose Sommerwind", and "rose Vent d'Été" in different countries. These are not names but are to be regarded as being trade designations and may be written rose SURREY ('Korlanum'), Rose SOMMERWIND ('Korlanum'), and rose VENT D'ÉTÉ ('Korlanum') respectively.

Ex. 2. The name *Syringa vulgaris* 'Andenken an Ludwig Späth' was established in 1883 and under the Rules of this *Code* is the accepted name for the cultivar. Due to prolonged use of the shortened form "Ludwig Spaeth" by North American nurserymen, the International Cultivar Registration Authority for lilacs has designated *S. vulgaris* LUDWIG SPAETH as a trade designation for the cultivar.

Ex. 3. ATTENTION! oak is not a cultivar name; however, it contains a US registered trademark (Reg. No 1508479) originally owned by Willet N. Wandell and is used as a trade designation to market *Quercus robur* 'Wandell', which name was itself established in 1989 on grant to Mr Wandell of US Plant Patent No 6746.

13.2. A trade designation is not to be cited as a synonym.

Note 1. A cultivar name that has become a synonym under the provisions of Art. 11.2 is sometimes used to market a cultivar, in which case it may also be treated as a trade designation (see Appendix X).

Ex. 4. 'Morning Yellow', the established epithet for a *Clematis* cultivar, was rejected by a statutory plant registration authority; the epithet 'Cadmy' was designated instead. *Clematis* 'Morning Yellow' is now treated as a synonym of *Clematis* 'Cadmy', but may also be used as a trade designation: *Clematis* MORNING YELLOW ('Cadmy').

Note 2. Nationally important established cultivar names that are not the earliest name may be taken up and used as trade designations.

Ex. 5. The apple cultivars 'Blauschwanz' and 'King of the Pippins' have long been known in Sweden as 'Kesäter'and 'Guldparmän'; their full names could be written as äpple KESÄTER ('Blauschwanz') and äpple GULDPARMÄN ('King of the Pippins').

CHAPTER III: CONVENTIONS FOR PRESENTATION OF NAMES

ARTICLE 14: CULTIVAR STATUS

14.1. Cultivar status is indicated by enclosing the cultivar epithet within single quotation marks. Double quotation marks and the abbreviations cv. and var. are not to be used within a name to distinguish cultivar epithets; such use is to be corrected.

Note 1. Single quotation marks are generally effected typographically either by using (‘) at the beginning and (’) at the end of an epithet as used throughout this *Code*, or alternatively by use of the apostrophe (') or other demarcation devices such as (′) on each side of the epithet.

Ex. 1. *Iris* ‘Cantab’, *Iris* 'Cantab', or *Iris* ′Cantab′, not *Iris* “Cantab”, *Iris* cv. Cantab, or *Iris* var. Cantab.

Ex. 2. *Pinus sylvestris* ‘Repens’, not *Pinus sylvestris repens*, *Pinus sylvestris* var. Repens, or *Pinus sylvestris* cv. ‘Repens’.

Note 2. Before 1 January 1996 the abbreviation “cv.” preceding a cultivar epithet was permitted as an alternative to the use of single quotation marks. Whilst this *Code* no longer recognizes the use of such a designation, botanic gardens and other collections of plants are likely to continue to bear such an abbreviation on their plant labels until such time as those labels are replaced.

14.2. Cultivars that are thought to be graft-chimaeras are not to be so indicated by use of the addition sign before the cultivar epithet.

Ex. 3. *Syringa* ‘Correlata’ is the name for *Syringa* × *chinensis* + *S. vulgaris* and must not be written *Syringa* + ‘Correlata’.

Ex. 4. *Camellia* ‘Daisy Eagleson’, thought to be composed of tissues from *C. japonica* and *C. sasanqua* ‘Maiden’s Blush’, is not to be written *Camellia* + ‘Daisy Eagleson’.

14.3. Cultivars that are thought to be of hybrid origin are not to be so indicated by use of the multiplication sign before the cultivar epithet.

Ex. 5. *Digitalis* ‘Mertonensis’ must not be written *Digitalis* × ‘Mertonensis’; *Distictis* ‘Mrs Rivers’, thought to be a hybrid between *D. buccinatoria* and *D. laxiflora*, is not to be written *Distictis* × ‘Mrs Rivers’.

ARTICLE 15: GROUP STATUS

15.1. Formal Group status is indicated by use of the word “Group” or its equivalent in other languages as the first or final word in the Group epithet.

Ex. 1. *Begonia* Elatior Group (in English); *Brassica oleracea* Sabellica Gruppe (in German); *Hydrangea macrophylla* Groupe Hortensis (in French); *Tulipa* Grupo Darwin (in Spanish); *Rhododendron* Jacqueline-Gruppen (in Swedish).

15.2. If, when using a Roman script, the word "Group" has to be abbreviated for any reason, the standard contraction "Gp" is to be employed in all languages irrespective of translated equivalents of the word "Group".

15.3. When used as part of a cultivar name, a Group epithet is placed within round brackets (parentheses) immediately before the cultivar epithet.

Ex. 2. *Dracaena fragrans* (Deremensis Group) 'Christianne'; *Fagus sylvatica* (Atropunicea Group) 'Riversii'; *Brassica oleracea* (Sabauda Group) 'Cantasa'.

ARTICLE 16: GREX STATUS

16.1. Grex status is indicated by the use of the word "grex", or by the standard contraction "gx".

16.2. The epithets of grexes are not to be placed within round brackets (parentheses) when used before cultivar epithets.

Ex. 1. *Cymbidium* Alexanderi gx 'Westonbirt' is not to be written *Cymbidium* (Alexanderi gx) 'Westonbirt'.

16.3. Notwithstanding Art. 16.1, names of grexes do not have to have the words "grex" or the abbreviation "gx" incorporated into their epithets (but see also Art. 16.4 and Art. 23.4).

Ex. 2. *Paphiopedilum* Sorel grex and *Cymbidium* Alexanderi gx may be written as *Paphiopedilum* Sorel and *Cymbidium* Alexanderi respectively.

16.4 Where a grex epithet and a Group epithet are cited in the same name, the grex epithet should be followed by the standard contraction "gx" or the word "grex" to distinguish it from the Group epithet.

Ex. 3. Francis Suzuki Group may be established within the grex × *Rhynchosophrocattleya* Marie Lemon Stick. This should be written as × *Rhynchosophrocattleya* Marie Lemon Stick grex Francis Suzuki Group or × *Rhynchosophrocattleya* Marie Lemon Stick gx Francis Suzuki Gp to distinguish the grex and Group epithets.

Ex. 4 Penway Dancer Group may be established within the grex *Bletilla* Penway Prelude and the cultivar 'Ballerina' may be established within Penway Dancer Group. This should be written as *Bletilla* Penway Prelude grex (Penway Dancer Group) 'Ballerina' or *Bletilla* Penway Prelude gx. (Penway Dancer Gp) 'Ballerina'.

ARTICLE 17: TRADE DESIGNATION STATUS

17.1. Trade designations may not be placed within demarcating quotation marks.

17.2. If cited, trade designations must always be accompanied by their accepted or adopted names.

17.3. If cited, trade designations must always be distinguished typographically from cultivar, Group, and grex epithets.

Ex. 1. *Choisya ternata* 'Limo' was established on grant of Plant Breeders' Rights, but it has been marketed as "*C. ternata* Goldfingers". To distinguish the trade designation from the cultivar epithet, the name must be distinguished typographically as, for example, styled *Choisya ternata* GOLDFINGERS 'Limo'. Other examples of such typographical distinction may be found under Art. 13.

Ex. 2. Trade designations in Chinese may be distinguished typographically in different ways (the typography of small capitals not being applicable), such as use of a clearly distinct typeface (for example, the 黑体 i.e. Heiti typeface in contrast to the usual 宋体 i.e. Songti typeface) or square brackets. Thus *Rosa* PEACE ('Madame A. Meilland') might be written as 和平月季 ('Madame A. Meilland') or [和平]月季 ('Madame A. Meilland').

Note 1. For further guidance on trade designations see Appendix X.

CHAPTER IV: LIMITATION OF THE PRINCIPLE OF PRIORITY

ARTICLE 18: STARTING POINTS IN NOMENCLATURE

18.1. Establishment of cultivar, Group, and grex names in any denomination class is treated as starting with a list or publication designated for that denomination class by the ISHS Special Commission for Cultivar Registration preferably on application from the relevant International Cultivar Registration Authority or, in the absence of such an authority, in consultation with appropriate organizations. In the absence of such an approved list or publication, establishment starts with Linnaeus's *Species Plantarum,* both volumes of which in this *Code* are, as in the *ICN*, treated as having been published simultaneously on 1 May 1753.

> *Ex. 1.* The starting point for cultivar and Group names in *Syringa* is S.D. McKelvey, *The Lilac*. Macmillan, New York. 1928. This decision, originally made by the Nomenclature Committee at the XII International Horticultural Congress (Berlin, 1936), was endorsed by the ISHS Commission for Nomenclature and Cultivar Registration (now ISHS Special Commission for Cultivar Registration).

18.2. The starting point for orchid grex names (Art. 4.1) is 2 January 1858, the date on which publication of the name for the first artificial orchid cross recorded in Europe occurred (see *Gard. Chron.* 1858: 4. 1858).

18.3. The starting point for names of graft-chimaeric genera is Linnaeus's *Species Plantarum,* both volumes of which in this *Code* are, as in the *ICN*, treated as having been published simultaneously on 1 May 1753.

ARTICLE 19: CONSERVATION OF NAMES

19.1. If it is found that a name that is contrary to the Rules of this *Code* has been *(a)* designated as accepted by an International Cultivar Registration Authority (Art. 11.6 and Art. 11.8), or *(b)* proposed to be accepted by anyone else (Art. 11.7), or *(c)* if the designation or proposed acceptance of a name is in dispute (Art. 11.9), application may be made to the IUBS International Commission for the Nomenclature of Cultivated Plants to rule on whether the name be conserved as the accepted name.

19.2. The basis for any conservation proposal must be provided for the Secretary of the IUBS International Commission for the Nomenclature of Cultivated Plants at the time of application; this must include reference to any publications that support the application with copies wherever possible.

19.3. The decision of the Commission shall be published (Art. 25.1). Conservation becomes effective from the date of publication (Art. 26.2) of the Commission's ruling.

CHAPTER V: NAMING PLANTS IN CULTIVATION

ARTICLE 20: NAMES OF WILD PLANTS BROUGHT INTO CULTIVATION

20.1. Plants brought from the wild into cultivation which are not subsequently classified as cultivars or Groups retain the names that are applied to the same plants growing in nature.

Ex. 1. *Fagus sylvatica*, the common or European beech, carries the same Latin name in cultivation as in the wild.

20.2. Plants of a species or lower taxon brought into cultivation may not demonstrate the range of variation associated with that taxon in the wild. If an assemblage of those plants has one or more characters that make it worth distinguishing, it may be given a cultivar or Group name.

Ex. 2. The distinctive plant grown in the Sir Harold Hillier Gardens as *Quercus frainetto* was the source (the ortet) for a large number of plants (the ramets) distributed by the nursery associated with those gardens and the resulting cultivar was named *Q. frainetto* 'Hungarian Crown' by A.J. Coombes in *The Hillier Manual of Trees and Shrubs*, ed. 6, 348. 1991.

Ex. 3. *Lessingia filaginifolia* 'Silver Carpet' with distinctive silvery foliage and pink-lavender flowers was selected from a wild population of *L. filaginifolia* collected from coastal bluffs exposed to ocean spray in Monterey County, California.

Ex. 4. *Fagus sylvatica* Atropunicea Group may be circumscribed to include all purple-leaved plants of the species. Likewise, *F. sylvatica* Cuprea Group may be circumscribed to include all plants of the species that have copper-coloured leaves.

ARTICLE 21: NAMES OF CULTIVARS

§1: GENERAL PROVISIONS

21.1. The name of a cultivar is a combination of the correct name of the genus or lower taxon to which it is assigned under the *ICN*, or its unambiguous common name, with a cultivar epithet (see Art. 8.1)

Ex. 1. The cultivar *Galanthus* 'John Gray' may also be referred to as snowdrop 'John Gray'.

21.2. The minimum requirement is for a cultivar epithet to accompany the name of

the genus in Latin form or a common name equivalent when that common name is unambiguous. When a cultivar can be assigned to a taxon at species rank or below, the name of that taxon (or its unambiguous common name equivalent) may accompany the cultivar epithet instead (see also Art. 21.7), in order to convey further information about the plant (see also Rec. 21A).

Ex. 2. *Achillea* 'Cerise Queen' may also be called *Achillea millefolium* 'Cerise Queen' or yarrow 'Cerise Queen'; potato 'Sharpe's Express' may also be called *Solanum* 'Sharpe's Express' or *Solanum tuberosum* 'Sharpe's Express'.

Ex. 3. *Camellia* 'Shōjō-no-mai', *Magnolia* 'William Watson', *Pisum* 'Consort', × *Triticosecale* 'Siskiyou' are combinations of the name of a genus in Latin form accompanied by a cultivar epithet.

Ex. 4. Apple 'James Grieve', potato 'Cara', poire 'Doyenné du Comice', 'Puzol' pepino, 'William Sim' carnation, and 'Golden Harvest' daffodil are acceptable names since they are unambiguously equivalent to *Malus domestica* 'James Grieve', *Solanum tuberosum* 'Cara', *Pyrus* 'Doyenné du Comice', *Solanum muricatum* 'Puzol', *Dianthus* 'William Sim', and *Narcissus* 'Golden Harvest' respectively.

Ex. 5. *Geranium* 'Mrs Kendall Clark' may be written *Geranium pratense* 'Mrs Kendall Clark' so as to include the species epithet; *Cedrus* 'Mt St Catherine' may be written *Cedrus libani* subsp. *atlantica* 'Mt St Catherine' so as to include the name of the subspecies to which it has been assigned.

Note 1. When the name of the genus or lower taxon is obvious from the context without confusion, the cultivar epithet may appear alone or separate from the Latin or common name.

Ex. 6. In the German magazine *Gartenpraxis* (July 2008: 8–14) in an article on daylilies the genus *Hemerocallis* is obvious from the context and therefore cultivar epithets, including 'Knights in White Satin', 'Now and Forever', 'Potion for Passion', 'Pure and Simple', and 'Trimmed in Gold', are given in the text, in captions and in a table without further reference to the genus.

21.3. Each word of a cultivar epithet must start with an initial capital letter unless linguistic custom demands otherwise. Exceptions are words after a hyphen (see Art. 35.12) unless they are proper nouns, articles, conjunctions, and prepositions other than those which are the first word of the epithet (see also Art. 21.25).

Ex. 7. A cultivar epithet commemorating the town of 's-Hertogenbosch in the Netherlands is to be written ''s-Hertogenbosch' and not ''S-Hertogenbosch'; similarly, the epithet commemorating the town IJsselham (spelled with the initial two letters in capitals) is to be written 'IJsselham' and not 'Ijsselham'.

Ex. 8. *Malus domestica* 'Beauty of Bath', *Rosa* 'Pompon de Paris', *Prunus* 'Hikaru Genji'

(the epithet commemorating a 10th century literary hero), and *Saxifraga fortunei* 'Akane-Fuji' are acceptable names. The use of hyphens in epithets will change 'Naughty but Nice' to 'Naughty-but-nice', 'Not Only but Also' to 'Not-only-but-also' and not all words will need to be hyphenated, as in 'Royal Hose-in-hose'.

21.4. A cultivar epithet remains unaltered when the name of the taxon to which it is assigned is changed unless, as may occur under Art. 6.3, the epithet is already in use in the denomination class to which it is re-assigned. In this case a new epithet will be required (but see also Art. 11.6 and Art. 21.9).

Ex. 9. The following names all refer to the same cultivar: *Endymion hispanicus* 'Rose Queen', *Hyacinthoides hispanica* 'Rose Queen', *Hyacinthoides* × *massartiana* 'Rose Queen', *Scilla campanulata* 'Rose Queen', *Scilla hispanica* 'Rose Queen', *Scilla hispanica* var. *campanulata* 'Rose Queen'.

§2: Formation of Cultivar Epithets in Latin Form

21.5. The final epithet in Latin form of the correct name under the *ICN* of a taxon at the rank of species or below is to be retained as the cultivar epithet if that taxon is subsequently reclassified as a cultivar (see also Rec. 21B).

Ex. 10. *Mahonia japonica* and *Primula denticulata* var. *cachmeriana* are the correct names under the *ICN* for these taxa when they are respectively considered to be a species and a varietas. They may, however, be regarded as cultivars instead, in which case the names are to be written as *Mahonia* 'Japonica' and *Primula denticulata* 'Cachmeriana'.

Ex. 11. The double-flowered form of *Spiraea cantoniensis* was named *S. cantoniensis* forma *lanceata* by Zabel in 1903. This is the correct name under the *ICN* at the rank of forma. When the double-flowered form is regarded as a cultivar instead and assigned to the same species, the name is to be written *Spiraea cantoniensis* 'Lanceata'.

21.6. In situations in which Art. 21.5 does not apply, the epithet of any name in Latin form published before 1 January 1959, even if it is not validly published under the *ICN*, that meets the requirements for establishment as a cultivar name under this *Code* (Art. 27.1), may be used as the cultivar epithet, if the plants to which it was applied are now considered to represent a cultivar.

Note 2. Reasons why names might not be validly published under the *ICN* include being published without being accompanied by a description or a reference to a description (contrary to its Art. 32.1) or being published without clear indication of rank on or after 1 January 1953 (contrary to its Art. 35.1). Providing that publication of such a name for plants now considered to be a cultivar occurred before 1 January 1959 and met the general requirements for establishment of a cultivar name, and no correct name under the *ICN* exists, the Latin epithet for these plants may be used as the cultivar epithet.

Ex. 12. *"Veronica Sutherlandii"* was published by the New Zealand nursery Duncan and Davies (Nursery Catalogue 1925: 23. 1925) without a description or reference to a description (a "nomen nudum"). The publication meets the requirements of Art. 27.1 of this *Code* and so when the species is treated as a cultivar, the epithet is to be used in the cultivar name as was done by L.J. Metcalf in *The Cultivation of New Zealand Trees and Shrubs* 267. 1972 where the cultivar was described under *Hebe pinguifolia* 'Sutherlandii'.

Ex. 13. *Weigela floribunda foliis purpureis* was published by Carrière, *Rev. Hort*. 1921: 278–9. 1921. Although this name is not validly published under the *ICN* (cf. Art. 23.1 and 24.2 of that *Code*), as Carrière was dealing with variants of *W. floribunda*, the cultivar name *W. floribunda* 'Foliis Purpureis' may be considered established under the provisions of this *Code*.

Ex. 14. *Juniperus excelsa viridis stricta* was published by Adrien Sénéclauze in 1867 (*Les Conifères*: 91), but this is not a validly published name at any rank under the *ICN* (cf. Art. 23.1, 23.6 and 24.2 of that *Code*). It would appear that the infraspecific epithet "viridis stricta" was intended, but this represents two adjectives in the nominative (*ICN* Art. 23.6) and so is unacceptable under the *ICN*, but as a cultivar the name is written *Juniperus excelsa* 'Viridis Stricta'.

21.7. If a cultivar epithet in Latin form established before 1 January 1959 has been repeated within a denomination class (Art. 6.1) but within different taxa, the cultivar epithet must be linked to the name of the taxon to which it applies.

Ex. 15. *Juniperus chinensis* 'Variegata', *Juniperus excelsa* 'Variegata', *Juniperus horizontalis* 'Variegata', *Juniperus procumbens* 'Variegata', and *Juniperus sabina* 'Variegata' may not be written as *Juniperus* 'Variegata' and to avoid confusion must always include the respective specific epithet.

21.8. If a cultivar epithet is an adjective derived from an epithet in Latin form, it must agree in gender with that of the name of the genus to which it is assigned.

Ex. 16. *Begonia* 'Elegantissima Superba'; *Calluna vulgaris* 'Aurea'; *Hibiscus syriacus* 'Violaceus'; *Malus floribunda* 'Arnoldiana'.

21.9. If a cultivar epithet is an adjective derived from an epithet in Latin form transferred to a genus with another gender, the gender of the epithet is changed to agree with that of the new genus.

Ex. 17. When *Veronica virginica* (feminine) is transferred to the genus *Veronicastrum* (neuter), the cultivar name *Veronica virginica* 'Alba' is altered to *Veronicastrum virginicum* 'Album'.

21.10. If a noun is used as part of a cultivar epithet and is qualified with an adjective, the latter agrees with the gender of the noun, not the gender of the generic name concerned.

Ex. 18. A *Rhododendron* cultivar named after Reinhold Ambrosius (a masculine personal name) would be *R.* 'Ambrosius Superbus' not 'Ambrosius Superbum', the gender of *Rhododendron* being neuter.

§3: Formation of Cultivar Epithets in a Language other than Latin

21.11. For a cultivar name to be established on or after 1 January 1959, its epithet is to comprise a word or words in any language but may not be entirely in Latin except as permitted under Art. 21.5, Art. 21.6, and Art. 21.22 (see also Art. 21.14 and Art. 21.25).

Ex. 19. The epithets 'Washington Bullatus', 'Loderi Red', 'Aurea Bennett', and 'Nani Baker' could all be established; "Aurea" is also a girl's name in Spain and "Nani" the Hindi term for the grandmother on the mother's side.

21.12. Notwithstanding Art. 21.11, Latin words or words in Latin form may be used as new cultivar epithets when it can be demonstrated that they are current in a language other than Latin for example as terms, common phrases, personal names, and place names.

Ex. 20. Bicolor, campus, major, minor, museum, and peninsula are Latin words currently used in modern languages; Aurora Borealis, Corpus Christi, and Habeas Corpus are Latin terms that may be used as, or in, cultivar epithets.

Ex. 21. "Caveat emptor", "nil desperandum", "noli me tangere", and "non sequitur" are Latin phrases used in modern languages that may be used as, or in, cultivar epithets.

Ex. 22. Cicero, Claudia, Claudius, Gordianus, Julia, Julius Caesar, and Paulus are Latin personal names that may be used as, or in, cultivar epithets.

Ex. 23. Africa, Bognor Regis, India, Londinium, Marston Magna, Mons, and Nova Scotia are place names in Latin that may be used as, or in, cultivar epithets.

21.13. For a cultivar name to be established on or after 1 January 1996 its epithet must consist of no more than 30 characters (Roman letters, numbers, and permitted punctuation marks or symbols) overall excluding spaces and the demarcating marks (see also Rec. 21L).

Ex. 24. After 1 January 1996 a name with the cultivar epithet 'Madame la Comtesse Oswald de Kerchove de Denterghem' could not be established.

21.14. The epithet of a cultivar name does not have to consist of an existing word or words but may be a novel invention.

Ex. 25. The first word in the cultivar epithets of the onions 'NuMex Arthur', 'NuMex

Crimson', 'NuMex Freedom', and 'NuMex Solano' is an invented word identifying New Mexico State University's Agricultural Experiment Station as the place of origin of these cultivars (see *HortScience* 37: 705–708. 2002 & 38: 306–310. 2003).

Ex. 26. 'AC Avonlea' is a cultivar of durum wheat developed at one of the stations of Agriculture Canada (AC); 'OAC Baxter' is a malting barley cultivar developed at the Ontario Agriculture College, Guelph, Ontario, Canada.

Ex. 27. The epithets of the roses 'Harwestsun', 'Harwex', 'Harwharry', and 'Harwicklow' were established using the convention followed by rose breeders whereby the first three letters indicate the breeder. In the above case the breeder was R. Harkness & Co. (see *Modern Roses 11*. 216. 2003).

§4: *PROHIBITIONS IN CULTIVAR EPITHETS*

21.15. A cultivar name may not be established if on or after 1 January 2004 its epithet consists solely of a single letter or solely of Arabic or Roman numerals or a single letter or numerals in combination with a punctuation mark.

Ex. 28. Names containing the epithets 'K', 'U!', '400', '21!', and 'MMIV' may not be established, but the epithets 'Hundred', '10 Downing Street', '461 Ocean Boulevard', '77 Sunset Strip', 'Apollo 13', 'Catch 22', 'Henry VIII', 'Pope Leo X', '4th July', 'M9' and 'Happy 21st Birthday' may be established.

21.16. A name is not established if on or after 1 January 1959 the cultivar epithet contains the words "form" or "variety" or their abbreviations or equivalents in other languages.

Ex. 29. *Persicaria affinis* 'Lowndes's Variety' is not established because it was published after 1958 (the accepted name is *P. affinis* 'Donald Lowndes'); *Iris chrysographes* 'Inshriach Form' is not established because it was published after 1958 (the accepted name is *Iris chrysographes* 'Inshriach'); *Hebe* 'Longacre Variety' and *Hypericum* 'Rowallane Variety' are both established because they were published before 1959.

21.17. A name is not established if on or after 1 January 1996 its cultivar epithet contains the following words or their equivalents in any language: "cultivar", "grex", "group", "hybrid", "maintenance", "mixture", "selection", "series", "sport", and "strain" or the plural form of these words, or the words "improved" and "transformed" or their equivalents in any language.

21.18. A name is not established if on or after 1 January 1996 its cultivar epithet when written in Roman script contains punctuation marks except the apostrophe ('), the comma (,), up to two non-adjacent exclamation marks (!), the period or full-stop (.), or the hyphen (-), the forward slash (/) or backward slash (\) symbols.

Ex. 30. The epithets 'Beryl, Viscountess Cowdray', 'Jeanne d'Arc', 'Oh Boy!', 'E.A. Bowles', 'Sing, Sing, Sing', 'ENT/100', 'Go-go Dancer', 'Westward Ho!', 'Saint-Louis-du-Ha! Ha!' and 'Wham! Blam!' are acceptable, but 'Help!!!', and 'Simon Who?' are not.

Ex. 31. The cultivar epithet 'N!xau', commemorating a San actor from Namibia is acceptable. The exclamation mark in this case represents one of the "click" sounds of the San language.

21.19. A name is not established if its cultivar epithet contains fractions or symbols except as specified in Art. 21.18 (see also Art. 35.8 for symbols that are to be transcribed).

Ex. 32. Names with epithets 'Happy@home.com', 'Sambuca®', '$Million', '100%', 'Two+Two', and '½ Empty' could not be established but names with epithets 'Million Dollars', 'Two Plus Two', and 'Half Empty' could be established.

21.20. Except where linguistic custom demands, a name is not established if on or after 1 January 1996 its cultivar epithet contains the Latin or common name(s) of the genus to which it is assigned.

Ex. 33. *Castanea* 'Pale Chestnut', *Gladiolus* 'Pink Gladiolus', *Narcissus* 'Davis Daff', *Narcissus* 'Granny's Daffodil', *Paeonia* 'Sussex Peony', *Phlox* 'Phlox of Sheep', and *Rhododendron* 'Rhododendron Mad' may not be established.

Ex. 34. *Dianthus* 'Rupert's Pink' is established; "pink" is not the common name for all plants in the genus *Dianthus*.

Ex. 35. *Prunus* 'Sato-zakura' is established; "zakura" is the Japanese word for flowering cherries, rather than a name for the whole genus.

Ex. 36. *Pyrus bretschneideri* 'Ya Li' contains the word "li", which is the Chinese common name for the genus *Pyrus*. According to Chinese linguistic custom, "li" is inseparable from "ya", and its inclusion in the cultivar epithet is therefore necessary and acceptable.

21.21. Notwithstanding Art. 21.20, Japanese names transcribed into a Roman script that include the common name of a species may be rendered as Romanized cultivar names on removal of the word equating to the Japanese name of the genus providing always that the resulting epithet in Roman script remains unique within the denomination class (see Art. 6.1).

Ex. 37. "Ōgon-Setouchi-Gibōshi" is the name used in Japan for a yellow-leaved cultivar of *Hosta pycnophylla.* The cultivar epithet 'Ōgon-Setouchi' could be derived from this name by removal of the word "Gibōshi" (which equates to the generic name *Hosta*) and by retention of the word "Setouchi" which is the common name of the species.

Ex. 38. "Fuiri-Tenjiku-Suge" becomes *Carex* 'Fuiri-Tenjiku', "Tenjiku-Suge" being the

common name for *Carex phyllocephala* with "Suge" being the common name for *Carex*; *Nelumbo* 'Ōga-Hasu' becomes *Nelumbo* 'Ōga' where "Hasu" in Japanese means *Nelumbo* (*N. nucifera*).

21.22. A name is not established if on or after 1 January 1959 its cultivar epithet is the name of a genus or the common name of a species or other denomination class if use of such epithets might lead to confusion.

Ex. 39. The names *Erica* 'Calluna' and snowdrop 'Snowflake' may not be established since, by referring to them in the market place as 'Calluna' heather and 'Snowflake' snowdrop respectively, people might be confused. However names such as ash 'Veronica', *Dianthus* 'Victoria', *Lilium* 'Erica', *Magnolia* 'Daphne', and *Rhododendron* 'Calypso' would all be acceptable since, although the epithets are names of genera, they are unlikely to cause confusion if written 'Veronica' ash, 'Victoria' *Dianthus*, 'Erica' *Lilium*, 'Daphne' *Magnolia*, and 'Calypso' *Rhododendron* respectively.

Ex. 40. *Calluna* 'Heather', *Geranium* 'Herb Robert', and *Silene* 'Jupiterbloem' could not be established since "heather" is the English common name for the genus *Calluna*, "herb robert" is an English common name for *Geranium robertianum*, and "jupiterbloem" is a Dutch common name for *Silene flos-jovis*.

Ex. 41. The names of the plum cultivars 'Apricot' and 'Peach', or *Prunus domestica* 'Apricot' and *Prunus domestica* 'Peach' (Hogg, 1866), published well before 1959, can be considered established names.

Ex. 42. *Dahlia* 'Northwest Cosmos' (named after the American baseball/football team), *Dianthus* 'Giulia Viola', and *Rhododendron* 'Nancy Stipa' are established names.

Ex. 43. *Lilium* 'Henri' is acceptable even though there is a *Lilium henryi*; *Clematis* 'Florida Blue' is acceptable even though there is a *Clematis florida* ("Florida" only forms part of the cultivar epithet and is a place name).

21.23. A name is not established if on or after 1 January 1996 its cultivar epithet is *(a)* so similar in its original written form, or *(b)* so similar or identical in pronunciation, or *(c)* so similar or identical in spelling when transliterated or transcribed into the Roman alphabet (see Rec. 27F) to an existing epithet in the denomination class to which the cultivar is assigned that the name might cause confusion.

Ex. 44. If proposed for publication after 1 January 1996, *Ilex* 'Green Point' could not be established since it might be confused with the existing *I. crenata* 'Greenpoint'.

Note 3. Epithets that have a distinct difference in pronunciation and are unlikely to cause confusion, even though they only differ by one character, may be accepted within the same denomination class.

Ex. 45. A cultivar name with the epithet 'Susannah' could not be established if there was an existing 'Susanna' in the same denomination class. However, 'Susanne' might not be considered confusing if the difference in pronunciation is distinct.

Ex. 46. *Dianthus* 'Sara' and *D.* 'Zara' could not both be established; *Dianthus* 'Samur', *D.* 'Samura' and *D.* 'Samurai' could all be established.

Ex. 47. *Erica carnea* 'Mrs D.E. Maxwell' could not be established since it may become confused with the existing *E. vagans* 'Mrs D.F. Maxwell'. However, *E. carnea* 'S.A. Maxwell' could be established.

Ex. 48. The cultivar name *Narcissus* 'Miss Amy Johnson' could not be established since it could be confused with the existing *N.* 'Amy Johnson'.

Ex. 49. *Rhododendron* 'Lady White' and *R.* 'Ladies' White' could both be established.

Ex. 50. In Japanese Kanji the characters, 牡蠣 (oyster), 垣 (fence), and 柿 (persimmon) are all pronounced and transcribed "kaki". If the first established cultivar epithet is '牡蠣', then cultivar names with original Japanese epithets '垣', and '柿' are not established in the same denomination class. On the other hand, cultivar names with original Chinese epithets '垣', and '柿' (both pronounced entirely differently from '牡蠣' and from each other in Chinese) could be established even if there is an existing cultivar epithet '牡蠣' in Japanese in the same denomination class, since they are not of the same or similar pronunciation, original written form, and transcription. The traditionally styled Chinese 牡蠣, simplified Chinese 牡蛎, and the Japanese 牡蠣 are of the same written form or are orthographic variants, and so only the earliest cultivar name with the epithet of either '牡蠣' or '牡蛎' could be established in the same denomination class.

21.24. A name is not established if on or after 1 January 1959 its cultivar epithet might exaggerate the merits of the cultivar and which might become confusing through the later introduction of new cultivars having comparable characters.

Ex. 51. Had they been published after 1958, apple 'Earliest of All', *Vicia faba* 'Longest Possible', and *Laburnum* 'Latest and Longest' could not be established.

Ex. 52. *Epiphyllum* 'Germany's Best' could not be established; *Phlox* 'Excellent' could be established.

§5: Other Provisions

21.25. A cultivar epithet may also be in the form of a code of up to 10 characters excluding spaces and that consists of no more than four alternating sets of a letter or letters and a number or numbers. Epithets of this type differing in only one character or numeral are acceptable.

Ex. 53. Names with the epithets '12AB34CD', '123-abcd4', '123/ABCD4', and 'Abc1234de' may be established but names with the epithets '12-AB 34 CD 1', and '1A2B/33' may not be established.

Ex. 54. A number of clonal rootstocks were developed by East Malling Research Station (UK) that were distributed with a sequence of cultivar epithets such as 'M9', 'M16', 'M25', 'M26', and 'M27'.

Ex. 55. *Helianthus annuus* cultivars with the epithets 'E9730LM', 'HA-OL 9', 'NS-HA26','PF 090 A', 'H 209 A/B', and 'PR64A82' have been established on grant of Plant Breeders' Rights.

Ex. 56. *Lilium* 'BJM 005' and *L.* 'BJM 001' are both acceptable epithets.

Note 4. Plants are sometimes circulated under collector's or breeder's numbers that are often made up of sequences of letters and numbers or numbers only. These are not to be taken as being cultivar epithets (see also Rec. 21C).

Ex. 57. *Corydalis taliensis* ACE 2443 must not be written *Corydalis taliensis* 'ACE 2443' nor *Corydalis taliensis* 'Ace 2443' since in this case the epithet is the collectors' reference number (Alpine Garden Society Expedition, China, 1995).

Recommendation 21A

21A.1. When a cultivar can be assigned to a taxon at species rank or below, the name of this taxon, or its unambiguous common name, should accompany the cultivar epithet, as this conveys further information about the plant which may be valuable to users.

Ex. 58. *Cyclamen hederifolium* var. *hederifolium* f. *albiflorum* (Bowles's Apollo Group) 'Artemis' is more informative than *Cyclamen* 'Artemis'.

Recommendation 21B

21B.1. The epithet of a cultivar name should not duplicate the final epithet in Latin form of the correct name under the *ICN* of the taxon at the rank of species or below to which it is assigned. The final epithet of the next later name acceptable under Art. 21.6 that applies to the cultivar should be used, or if one does not exist the cultivar should be given a new epithet.

Ex. 59. *Hosta sieboldii* published by Ingram (*Baileya* 15(1): 29. 1967) was based on the name *Hemerocallis sieboldii* of Paxton (*Mag. Bot*. 5: 25. March, 1838) which was itself based on a variegated plant. If Paxton's plant is considered referable to a cultivar being grown today, the cultivar should not be referred to as *Hosta sieboldii* 'Sieboldii' but should be given the epithet 'Albomarginata', based on the next validly published name under the *ICN*, *Funckia albomarginata* of Hooker (*Bot. Mag.* tab. 3567. May 1838).

Ex. 60. *Viburnum* × *bodnantense* 'Dawn' was established to distinguish the original cultivar upon which *Viburnum* × *bodnantense* (the name for the plants produced by crossing *V. farreri* with *V. grandiflorum*) was based.

Ex. 61. *Epimedium* × *warleyense* was validly published by W.T. Stearn (*Journ. Linn. Soc. Bot*. 51: 519–520. 1938) and may be interpreted to encompass the progeny of crosses between *E. alpinum* and *E. pinnatum*. The nomenclatural type for the name was a specimen from a garden plant that was separately named 'Willmottiae' by E.S. Lyttel (*My Garden* 12: 486. 1937). The full name of the cultivar on which the hybrid epithet was based is thus *E.* × *warleyense* 'Willmottiae' and this name separates the original cultivar from other distinguishable progeny of the same cross.

Recommendation 21C

21C.1. Epithets of unestablished working names, used for example while a plant is undergoing trial or evaluation, should not be taken up for other cultivars where their existence is known.

Ex. 62. *Dianthus* LADY MADONNA ('WP04 Opal') was known while undergoing trial as both "Opal" and "Devon Opal". These unestablished working names should not be taken up for other cultivars.

Recommendation 21D

21D.1. A cultivar epithet should be as short as practical and should not consist of nor contain excessively long words that may be difficult to write or pronounce (see Art. 21.13).

Ex. 63. The epithet 'Diplomgartenbauinspektor' may be considered excessively long and difficult for some to pronounce or write.

Recommendation 21E

21E.1. A cultivar name whose epithet is or contains the name of a living individual should not be published unless that individual has given permission for their name to be used.

Recommendation 21F

21F.1. A cultivar name should not be published if its epithet might cause confusion by consisting of terms that are likely to be encountered in the market place.

Ex. 64. Names with the cultivar epithets 'Bonsai', 'Ten Dollars', 'Two Litres', 'Container Grown', 'Poisonous', 'Post Paid' and 'Tax Free' should be avoided. However, the epithets 'Million Dollars' and 'Ten Bob Note' are unlikely to lead to confusion in marketing plants.

Recommendation 21G

21G.1. A cultivar name should not be published if its epithet consists solely of a word or words that may be descriptive (adjectival) and that could refer to some character or characters common or with the potential to become common in cultivars of the denomination class concerned.

Ex. 65. Names with the cultivar epithets 'Blanche' (a given name for a woman or French for "white"), 'Large', 'Large White', 'Double Red', 'Ōgon' (Japanese for "gold" or "golden"), and 'Variegated' should be avoided.

Recommendation 21H

21H.1. A cultivar name should not be published if it may give the impression that the cultivar has one or more characters that it does not possess.

Ex. 66. *Iris* 'American Flag' should not be published if it is not a "flag" iris (where "flag" is a term used by iris growers to denote a particular sort of iris flower); apple 'Redskin' should not be published if the apple concerned is known not to have a red skin.

Recommendation 21I

21I.1. A cultivar name should not be published if its epithet may give the impression that the cultivar is derived from or related to another when this is not the case.

Ex. 67. *Lilium* 'Bellingham Supreme' should not be published if the cultivar does not have the characteristics shared by other members of *Lilium* Bellingham Group; apple 'Bramley's Wonder' should not be published if it is not derived from the apple 'Bramley's Seedling'.

Recommendation 21J

21J.1. A cultivar name should not be published if its epithet may give a false impression concerning the identity of its raiser, breeder, introducer or origins.

Ex. 68. *Potentilla* 'Davidson's Red' should not be published if the raiser was not someone called Davidson; apple 'East Malling Champion' should not be published if the cultivar has no history of association with the research station at East Malling in the United Kingdom noted for breeding work on apples.

Recommendation 21K

21K.1. A cultivar name should not be published if its epithet might cause offence (see also Art. 31.8).

Recommendation 21L

21L.1. A cultivar epithet established in a non-Roman script should consist of no more than 30 characters when transliterated or transcribed into Roman script (see also Art. 21.13).

Recommendation 21M

21M.1. A cultivar epithet should not contain the epithet of a species from the genus in which that cultivar is placed.

Recommendation 21N

21N.1. Where the original application of a cultivar name can no longer be ascertained, recognizably different lineages may be distinguished by appending a device such as the name of the originator of that lineage (see also Art. 30.5).

ARTICLE 22: NAMES OF GROUPS

22.1. The name of a Group is the combination of the correct name of the genus under the *ICN*, or its unambiguous common name, or lower taxon to which it is assigned, with a Group epithet (see Art. 8.1, Art. 11.5, and Art. 32.2).

Ex. 1. *Allium cepa* Shallot Group; *Brassica oleracea* Gemmifera Group; *Dracaena* Deremensis Group; *Hydrangea* Lacecap Group; *Rosa* Polyantha Group.

Note 1. When the name of the genus or lower taxon is obvious from the context without confusion, the Group epithet may appear alone or separate from the Latin or common name.

22.2. A Group epithet must be either one word or several words with which the word "Group", or its equivalent in other modern languages, is associated.

Ex. 2. *Abutilon* Darwinii Group; *Brassica rapa* Pak-choi Group; *Fagus sylvatica* Purple-leaved Group; *Solanum aethiopicum* Gilo Group; *Vicia faba* Elatae Group.

22.3. Each word of a Group epithet must start with an initial capital letter unless linguistic custom demands otherwise. Notwithstanding linguistic custom, the word "Group" or its equivalent in other languages is always to be written with a capital initial letter when rendered in a Roman script.

22.4. In forming the part of a Group epithet associated with the word "Group" the Rules as in Art. 21.5–21.24 and Rec. 21A-M (excluding Rec. 21G) governing the formation of cultivar epithets shall apply (reading "Group" for "cultivar" throughout); however, with Art. 21.20, established practice should be followed where this does not cause confusion.

Ex. 3. In vegetable crops such as *Beta* (beets), following widespread established practice, the name *Beta* Spinach Beet Group is to be regarded as acceptable.

Ex. 4. The epithet Cumberland and Westmorland Purple Group would be acceptable (Art. 21.13).

22.5. Notwithstanding Art. 21.17 the word "Group", or its equivalent in any language, is considered part of the Group epithet (see Art. 15.1). It can only occur once in a Group epithet.

22.6. If a Group epithet is formed from a grex epithet established before 1 January 2004, the former grex epithet is used with the word "Group" replacing the word "grex" to form the Group epithet.

Ex. 5. *Lilium* Celica Group has been established, originally as a grex, to cover all the progeny of the cross between *L.* 'Pumpkin Sweet' and *L.* 'Unique', which share the characteristics given in its description in the *International Lily Register*, Suppl. 11: 8. 1993.

Ex. 6. Under the provisions of previous editions of this *Code*, *Lilium* Mount Shasta grex was designated for hybrids between *L. kelloggii* and *L. pardalinum*; since the grex system is no longer used within lilies, the name is now *Lilium* Mount Shasta Group.

Ex. 7. *Rhododendron* Jacqueline Group has been designated for all the progeny of the cross between *R.* 'Albatross' and *R. facetum* (see the *International Rhododendron Register* 124. 1958).

Recommendation 22A

22A.1. The name of a Group should not be published if its epithet is the same as, or is confusingly similar to, an epithet of a cultivar name that has been previously established in the denomination class concerned unless it is thought that the category of Group is more appropriate than the category of cultivar.

Ex. 8. *Hosta* Frances Williams Group should not be published after establishment of *H.* 'Frances Williams' for so long as the cultivar is maintained.

Ex. 9. *Ranunculus ficaria* Brazen Hussy Group might be published if it is thought that the cultivar *R.* 'Brazen Hussy' is no longer distinguishable from other plants that have the same characteristics to the extent that such an assemblage no longer meets the criteria for being recognized as a cultivar (Art. 2.3).

Recommendation 22B

22B.1. While the *Code* does not recognize Series as a category, it is possible to treat Series as Groups where appropriate, and where it does not cause confusion.

Ex. 10. *Calluna vulgaris* Garden Girls Series, *Hydrangea* Endless Summer Series and *Papaver* Super Poppy Series should not be transposed from Series into Groups as the association of cultivars into these series is entirely arbitrary with respect to taxonomy.

Ex. 11. *Eustoma* Tiramisu Series, which includes the cultivars 'Tiramisu Cream', 'Tiramisu Double Cream' and 'Tiramisu Pink Picotee', was defined as "extra dwarf but well-branched"

in the 2005–2006 Takii Seed catalogue. It may be transposed from a Series into a Group, if desired.

ARTICLE 23: NAMES OF GREXES

23.1. The name of a grex is a combination of the correct name of the genus under the *ICN*, or its unambiguous common name, with a grex epithet (see Art. 8.1).

23.2. Each word of a grex epithet must start with an initial capital letter unless linguistic custom demands otherwise (see also Rec. 23A).

23.3. In forming the part of the grex epithet associated with the word "grex" the Rules as in Art. 21.8–21.24 and Rec. 21A–M, governing the formation of cultivar epithets shall apply (reading "grex" for "cultivar" throughout).

Ex. 1. *Paphiopedilum* Greenteaicecreamandraspberries grex is an accepted name (Art. 21.13).

23.4. Notwithstanding Art. 21.17, the word "grex" or "gx" can only occur once in a grex epithet.

23.5. On or after 1 January 2010, a grex epithet may not be established if it is identical to that of a nothospecific epithet with the same parentage.

Note 1. A grex and a nothospecies derived from the same two species are not equivalent as the nothospecies would include backcrosses, whereas a backcrossed grex is considered a different taxon requiring a different grex epithet.

Ex. 2. *Pleione* × *lagenaria* (*P. maculata* × *P. praecox*) contains the established grexes: Confirmation grex (*P. maculata* × *P. praecox*); Liz Shan grex (Confirmation grex × *P. praecox*); Lassen Peak grex (*P. praecox* × *P.* × *lagenaria*) (see *Orchid Rev.* 116(1282): 210–214. 2008).

Note 2. Where a grex and a nothospecies of identical parentage are hybridized, the name of the first generation progeny shall be that of the nothospecies.

Ex. 3. When *Pleione* × *lagenaria* (*P. maculata* × *P. praecox*) and *P.* Confirmation grex (*P. maculata* × *P. praecox*) are hybridized, offspring are named as *P.* × *lagenaria* and do not form a new grex, unless it can be demonstrated that the individual parental plant assigned to *P.* × *lagenaria* was not a first generation hybrid between the two parent species (a primary cross).

Note 3. Where established before 1 January 2010, a nothospecies and a grex may share the same epithet. The epithets may be distinguished typographically: in the case of

nothospecies by the use of a preceding multiplication sign, use of italics and a lower case initial letter, and in the case of a grex (or grexes) the lack of a multiplication sign, no italics and an upper case initial letter.

Ex. 4. The nothospecies *Cattleya* × *claesiana* Rolf. and the grex *Cattleya* Claesiana gx are distinguished typographically although they both represent a hybrid of the same two species (*C. intermedia* × *C. loddigesii*).

Recommendation 23A

23A.1. Notwithstanding Art. 23.2, the word "grex" or abbreviation "gx" should start with a lower case letter, following established custom.

ARTICLE 24: NAMES OF GRAFT-CHIMAERAS

24.1. Graft-chimaeras are designated either by a formula or, when they are a union between two genera, by a generic name in Latin form.

24.2. The formula for a graft-chimaera is the accepted names of the component taxa arranged in alphabetical order linked by the addition sign "+". A space must be left on each side of the addition sign in such formulae.

Ex. 1. *Crataegus* + *Mespilus*, *Cytisus purpureus* + *Laburnum anagyroides*, and *Syringa* × *chinensis* + *S. vulgaris* are formulae for graft-chimaeras.

24.3. When the component taxa of a graft-chimaera belong to different genera a unique name in Latin form may be formed by combining part of the name of the genus of one of the component genera, connected by a vowel, with the full name of the other component genus (condensed formula), and prefixing the addition sign "+". A space may be left between the addition sign and the generic name. The generic name thus formed must not be the same as that of another genus or hybrid genus validly published under the provisions of the *ICN* (see Division III).

Ex. 2. + *Crataegomespilus* is the name for graft-chimaeras between *Crataegus* and *Mespilus* whereas × *Crataemespilus*, published under the provisions of the *ICN*, is the name for hybrids between *Crataegus* and *Mespilus*.

24.4. When a new generic name has been formed as provided for by Art. 24.3, the name of a graft-chimaera cultivar consists of the graft-chimaeric generic name followed by a cultivar epithet.

Ex. 3. + *Crataegomespilus* 'Dardarii' is the name of a graft-chimaera of *Crataegus*

monogyna and *Mespilus germanica* whereas × *Crataemespilus gillotii* is the name for hybrids between the two species.

24.5. When the component taxa of a graft-chimaera belong to the same genus, the name of the graft-chimaera is the name of the genus followed by a cultivar epithet.

Ex. 4. *Camellia* 'Daisy Eagleson' is a graft-chimaera having tissue from *C. sasanqua* 'Maiden's Blush' in association with tissue from *C. japonica*.

24.6. Distinctive graft-chimaeras may arise from the same component taxa in which case they are treated as separate cultivars and are to be named accordingly.

Ex. 5. + *Crataegomespilus* 'Dardarii' and + *Crataegomespilus* 'Jules d'Asnières' are distinct cultivars of the graft-chimaera *Crataegus monogyna* + *Mespilus germanica*.

CHAPTER VI: PUBLICATION AND ESTABLISHMENT

ARTICLE 25: CONDITIONS OF PUBLICATION

25.1. Publication is effected under this *Code* only by distribution of printed or similarly duplicated material (including indelible autograph) through sale, exchange, or gift to the general public or at least to botanical, agricultural, forestry, or horticultural institutions with libraries accessible to botanists, mycologists, agriculturists, foresters or horticulturists generally. It is not effected by *(a)* communication of new names at a public meeting, *(b)* the placing of names on labels, *(c)* the issue of microform made from manuscripts, typescripts or other unpublished material, *(d)* publication via electronic media (but see Art. 25.1 Note 3, Rec. 25C.1 and Art. 26.2, Note 1), or *(e)* by publication in confidential trade lists that are not made generally available.

> *Note 1*. For the purposes of this Article, printed material is defined as a publication reproduced by any mechanical or graphical process whereby a number of identical, legible, and indelible copies are made. The issue of microform and unpublished theses is not regarded as a means of effective publication.
>
> *Note 2*. For the purposes of this Article, indelible autograph is handwritten material reproduced by some mechanical or graphical process (such as lithography, offset, or metallic etching).
>
> *Note 3*. Where a trade catalogue, or a publication relating to an ICRA Register and/or Checklist, has been made available in electronic media, its formal publication may be effected by the printing and deposit of two copies in a designated library (see Rec. 25C.1 and Appendix IV).

25.2. Notwithstanding Art. 25.1, Chinese, Japanese, and Korean books are considered published if, before 1 January 1900, they were copied by hand from a handwritten original.

25.3. Graft-chimaeric generic names are not published if, on or after 1 January 1953, they appear either in works of indelible autograph or in trade catalogues or non-scientific newspapers nor are they published if they appear in seed-exchange lists on or after 1 January 1973.

Recommendation 25A

25A.1. Authors should avoid publishing new names of cultivars or Groups in ephemeral

printed material of any kind, in particular that which is multiplied in restricted and uncertain numbers, where the permanence of the text may be limited, where the publication in terms of numbers of copies is not obvious, or where the printed material is unlikely to reach the users described in Art. 25.1.

Recommendation 25B

25B.1. It is strongly recommended that copies of publications, especially trade catalogues, containing new cultivar or Group names should be sent to appropriate International Cultivar Registration Authorities and, if possible, to libraries that maintain collections of such publications.

Recommendation 25C

25C.1. The publisher of a trade catalogue, or ICRA Register and/or Checklist, in electronic media is strongly encouraged to print and deposit two copies in a designated library (see Art. 25.1 Note 3 and Appendix IV); should this not have been done, anyone else doing so should where possible, receive prior permission of the publisher.

25C.2. In addition to Art. 25.1 Note 3 and Rec. 25C.1, it is recommended that single printed copies are distributed to a minimum of five libraries.

ARTICLE 26: DATE OF PUBLICATION

26.1. On or after 1 January 1959 publication is deemed to be effected only if the publication containing the name of the cultivar, Group, grex, or graft-chimaeric genus is clearly dated at least to the year.

26.2. The date of publication is the date on which publication as defined in Art. 25.1 took place. In the absence of proof of some other date such as the date on which the publisher or his agent delivers printed material to one of the usual carriers for distribution to the public, the one appearing in the publication itself must be accepted.

> *Note 1.* Where a trade catalogue is printed from an electronic medium (Rec. 25C.1), the date of publication is taken to be the date recorded by the designated library on the two copies they receive.

26.3. In cases where a dated trade catalogue or other dated publication covers more than one year or spans a period covering part of two years, in the absence of evidence to the contrary, the earlier date given is to be taken as being the date of publication.

> *Ex. 1.* A trade catalogue covering the period Summer 1993 to Spring 1994 is treated as having been published in Summer 1993.

26.4. Notwithstanding Art. 26.1, if a printed trade catalogue or other publication contains no evidence of date, subsequent published research may determine the effective date of that publication.

Ex. 2. A number of nursery catalogues and other publications from the Daisy Hill Nursery, Ireland, were published without internal evidence of date. Some of their dates have been established by further research and are published in an appendix to E. Charles Nelson & Alan Grills, *Daisy Hill Nursery*, *Newry*: *a History of 'the most interesting nursery probably in the world'*, Northern Ireland Heritage Gardens Committee, Belfast, 1998.

Recommendation 26A

26A.1. In cases where a printed trade catalogue or other publication comprises sheets that are not permanently bound, each sheet is to be clearly dated at least to the year.

ARTICLE 27: CONDITIONS OF ESTABLISHMENT

27.1. In order to be established names governed by this *Code* must *(a)* be published (Art. 25.1–25.3) on or after the starting-point date for the relevant denomination class (Art. 6.1), *(b)* appear in a dated publication (Art. 26), *(c)* have a form that complies with the provisions of Art. 21.5–21.25 for a cultivar or Art. 22.4–22.6 for a Group or Art. 23 for a grex or Art. 24.3 for the graft-chimaeric genus, and *(d)* for a cultivar or Group published on or after 1 January 1959, be accompanied by a description or by reference to a previously published description (but see Art. 27.3–27.5).

27.2. For the purposes of this *Code* a description is a word or words that *(a)* indicate one or more recognizable characters of a cultivar or Group, or *(b)* distinguish the new cultivar or Group from one whose name has been previously or is simultaneously being established.

27.3. The names of grexes (Art. 4.1) and graft-chimaeric genera (Art. 24.3) are established if the accepted names of both parents of the grex or graft-chimaera concerned are stated at the time of publication providing that the provisions of Art. 27.1 *(a)–(c)* are fulfilled.

Ex. 1. *Thrixspermum* Eric Holttum grex was established by Alex Hawkes (*Orchid Rev*. 63(742): 58. Apr. 1955) without any description (Art. 27.1(d)) but merely by stating the parentage to be *T. amplexicaule* × *T. scopa*.

Ex. 2. + *Crataegomespilus* was established by Simon-Louis (*Rev. Hort.* 1899: 403, 530. Sept. 1899) on stating that the component taxa were *Crataegus* and *Mespilus*.

27.4. Notwithstanding Art. 27.1 and Art. 27.3, the names of grexes (Art. 4.1) may be established if the full name of one parent is known, but only the generic name or nothogeneric name of the other parent is known, and is stated at the time of publication, providing that the provisions of Art. 27.1 *(a)–(c)* are fulfilled.

27.5. Notwithstanding Art. 27.1, the name of a cultivar is established if it is accepted under an equivalent term in a register maintained by a statutory plant registration authority.

Note 1. In the regulations of some statutory plant registration authorities the term "variety denomination" is used to mean "a name approved for marketing" and equates to the term "cultivar epithet" as defined in this *Code*.

27.6. A name that has not been accepted by the author who publishes it or one that has only been provisionally listed by an International Cultivar Registration Authority or statutory plant registration authority is not regarded as being established.

Ex. 3. *Erodium daucoides* 'Pico de Fraile' listed by the International Cultivar Registration Authority in its *Preliminary Checklist of Erodium Cultivar Names*, issue 2: 6. 1999 is not established in this publication as it is clearly marked "status: to be confirmed" and no further information is given.

Note 2. Variety denominations that are proposed prior to the grant of Plant Breeders' Rights are not established. Only when such rights have been granted and the decision has been made public, in print or electronically, may the variety denomination be deemed to be established. The date of the name is the date of granting such rights.

Ex. 4. *Delphinium* 'Princess Caroline Sunrise' listed in the applications for Plant Breeders' Rights in the Netherlands (*Publikatieblad* 432: 3. 2003) is not established in this listing which merely indicates that an application has been received under this name. Establishment would be effected when this cultivar name is published as part of a grant of rights.

27.7. Names governed by this *Code* are not established if, at the time of publication, no plants for which the name is proposed existed.

27.8. Except as provided for by Art. 11.5 and Art. 32.2, when two or more cultivar, Group, or grex names are simultaneously published in the same work for what the author considers to be the same cultivar, Group, or grex, only one may be established. In the absence of clear indication as to which should be the accepted name, none is established.

Recommendation 27A

27A.1. The description of any new cultivar or Group should be sufficiently full to make clear how the cultivar or Group differs from similar cultivars or Groups.

Recommendation 27B

27B.1. Reference to a previously published description should include *(a)* the author's name, *(b)* the full title of the publication, *(c)* the page number on which the description appears, and *(d)* the year of publication.

Recommendation 27C

27C.1. A coloured illustration, or a reference to a previously published coloured illustration, should be provided to accompany the description of a new cultivar or Group.

Recommendation 27D

27D.1. When publishing a new cultivar name, the parentage and history of the cultivar, the derivation or meaning of the cultivar epithet, and the names of the raiser or breeder, nominant, and introducer should be stated when known.

27D.2. When publishing a new Group or grex name, the appropriate elements of Rec. 27D.1. should be stated where known.

27D.3. When the epithet is derived from a language different from that of its publication the original word or phrase should be given (see Rec. 34A.2).

Recommendation 27E

27E.1. When publishing a new Group name based on an epithet formed under the *ICN* the full name under the *ICN* should be cited.

Ex. 5. *Cucumis melo* Flexuosus Group is based on *Cucumis flexuosus* L.

Recommendation 27F

27F.1. If a new cultivar, Group, or grex name is established in a script other than Roman, a transliteration (Art. 33.1) or a transcription (Art. 34.1) of the epithet into Roman script using one of the standards recommended in this *Code* should be simultaneously provided.

27F.2. When establishing cultivar, Group, or grex epithets in languages using non-Roman alphabets or characters, the registrant should provide and the International Cultivar Registration Authorities should record the epithets in their original scripts, in addition to any transliterations, transcriptions, or translations in Roman script, as appropriate (see Art. 32–34).

Recommendation 27G

27G.1. A specimen of a new cultivar or Group, either living or dried, should be sent to the appropriate International Cultivar Registration Authority or to a public herbarium that maintains collections of nomenclatural standards (see Division V and Appendix III) along with any coloured photographic, illustrative, or other relevant material.

Recommendation 27H

27H.1. The institution or organization maintaining the nomenclatural standard for the cultivar or Group should be cited when establishing the name of that cultivar or Group.

ARTICLE 28: CITATION OF AUTHORS' NAMES

28.1. It is not necessary to cite the name of the author who has established a name governed by this *Code*.

28.2. If citation of the author of the name of a cultivar, Group, or grex is considered desirable, the name of the author may be placed following the epithet of the cultivar, Group, or grex name, in which case the name of the author attributed with establishment of the name is to be cited without regard to any original taxonomic position of that epithet.

> *Ex. 1.* The citation *Larix decidua* 'Cervicornis' Beissner may be used even though the name was originally published as *L. europaea* var. *cervicornis* by Beissner, *Handb. Nadelholzk.* ed. 1. 328. 1891.

28.3. If a Group epithet formed in a language other than Latin is translated (Art. 32.2) or if a cultivar, Group, or grex epithet is either transliterated (Art. 33.1) or transcribed (Art. 34.1) or amended as provided for in Art. 21.8–21.9 or Art. 35, the resulting name is regarded as having the same author and date (Art. 9.1) as the original name.

28.4. If a name is established by an International Cultivar Registration Authority on

behalf of a registrant, the author of the name is not to be taken as that of the Registrar who publishes the name but is to be taken as being the registrant.

Ex. 2. *Narcissus* 'Alnwick Beauty' was established in the *International Daffodil Register and Classified List (1998)*, 10th Supplement in 2007. The author of the epithet is D.C. MacArthur, cited as the registrant of the name in that publication.

28.5. The author of a cultivar name established under the regulations of a statutory plant registration authority (Art. 27.5) is to be taken as being the person to whom rights are granted.

Ex. 3. Author citation of *Ilex* × *meserveae* 'Blue Angel' and *Ilex* × *meserveae* 'Mesog' may be written as *Ilex* × *meserveae* 'Blue Angel' K.K. Meserve and *Ilex* × *meserveae* 'Mesog' K.K. Meserve respectively, since Kathleen K. Meserve was stated as being "the inventor" of both cultivars in the documentation issued by the US Patent and Trademark Office that accompanied grant of Plant Patent to the inventor. (Patent number 3662 granted 17 December 1974 and 4878 granted 17 August 1982 respectively.)

Ex. 4. The full cultivar name and author of the following apple is written *Malus domestica* 'Star Lady' P. Brindle as the name was established in the official journal of the New Zealand Plant Variety Rights Authority where it is stated that P. Brindle was the "owner" of those rights (*New Zealand Plant Variety Rights Journal* 86: 5. 2001).

28.6. If citation of the author of the graft-chimaeric generic name is considered desirable, the name of the author may be placed following the generic name.

Ex. 5. + *Hylogymnocalycium* is the name, established by Paul Heath (as '*Hylocalycium*') in the *Sussex Cactus and Succulent Yearbook* in 1987, for graft-chimaeras between *Gymnocalycium* and *Hylocereus*, which was subsequently corrected by Gordon Rowley (*British Cactus and Succulent Journal* 23(1): 12, 2005). It may be written as + *Hylocalycium* P.V.Heath ex G.D.Rowley, when citing the author.

Recommendation 28A

28A.1. If the author's name is cited after the name of a cultivar, Group, grex, or the graft-chimaeric generic name, the provisions of Art. 46, Art. 47, and Art. 50 of the *ICN*, including those for author abbreviations if desired, should be employed wherever practical.

CHAPTER VII: CHOICE, RE-USE, AND REJECTION OF NAMES

ARTICLE 29: CHOICE OF NAMES

29.1. When two or more cultivar, Group or grex names have been established using epithets in Latin form under the provisions of Art. 21.5 or Art. 22.4 and when, due to continued varied and competing use, it is uncertain which of those names best preserves existing usage, the name with the epithet based on the earliest validly published Latin epithet is to be accepted regardless of original rank.

> *Ex. 1.* Under the *ICN* the earliest available name for purple beeches at the rank of *varietas* is *Fagus sylvatica* var. *atropunicea* published by Weston in 1770 but at the rank of *forma* it is *F. sylvatica* f. *atropurpurea* published by Kirchner in 1864. Both names have been widely used. If this taxon is subsequently recognized as either a cultivar (Art. 2) or a Group (Art. 3), the name to be used is *F. sylvatica* 'Atropunicea' or *F. sylvatica* Atropunicea Group.

29.2. When there are two or more names in use for the same cultivar, grex, or within the same language for a Group, the name that best preserves existing usage is to be chosen as the accepted name by the appropriate International Cultivar Registration Authority without regard to any rank in which those epithets might have been established (Art. 27.1) or to the principle of priority (Art. 11.1; see also Art. 11.6 and Art. 11.8). The name becomes so fixed by publication (Art. 25.1) of the decision.

> *Ex. 2.* *Erica vagans* var. *kevernensis* was validly published in 1922 under the provisions of the *ICN* and *E. vagans* 'Kevernensis' has been used as a cultivar name under the provisions of Art. 21.5. *E. vagans* 'St Keverne' was published three years later for the same cultivar and this name is now more widely used. The International Cultivar Registration Authority for heathers has chosen the later epithet to be the accepted name so as to best preserve existing usage.

29.3. When two or more cultivars, Groups, or grexes in the same denomination class have received the same or a confusingly similar epithet, the cultivar, Group, or grex whose accepted name includes that epithet is the one selected by an International Cultivar Registration Authority (but see Art. 11.6, Art. 11.8 and Art. 30.2). The name becomes so fixed by publication (Art. 25.1) of the decision and preferably by citation of a designated nomenclatural standard (see Division V).

29.4. If a hitherto recognized species or infraspecific taxon is no longer thought to represent a distinct taxon, the name of which is provided for under the *ICN*, and if this would otherwise enforce an undesirable change of epithet for a cultivar or Group, the epithet of the name of the former taxon *(a)* may be incorporated into an existing cultivar epithet provided that the latter is also in Latin form, or *(b)* may form the

epithet of a cultivar (Art. 21.5), or *(c)* may form the epithet of the name of a Group (Art. 3.3). Such action does not involve any change in author citation (Art. 28.2).

Ex. 3. When *Cedrus atlantica* is, for taxonomic reasons, included as part of *C. libani*, as long as there is no value in creating *C. libani* Atlantica Group (Art. 3.3), the cultivar *C. atlantica* 'Aurea', originally attributed to A.H. Kent in 1900, may have its name changed to *C. libani* 'Atlantica Aurea' Kent to avoid confusion with *C. libani* 'Aurea' of A. Sénéclauze published in 1868.

Ex. 4. *Retinospora squarrosa* was validly published by Zuccarini in 1844 for a plant imported to Belgium from Japan by von Siebold. This plant is now considered to be a cultivar of *Chamaecyparis pisifera* and is named *C. pisifera* 'Squarrosa'.

Ex. 5. If *Hosta fortunei* is no longer recognized as a species but the epithet is used to form the name of a Group (Art. 3.3), the name *H. fortunei* 'Albopicta' may be written as *Hosta* (Fortunei Group) 'Albopicta'.

Recommendation 29A

29A.1. The resurrection of long-forgotten or obsolete names for cultivars, Groups, or grexes that take priority over the established name currently in use for the same cultivar, Group, or grex should be avoided. If a name is found that has priority over an existing name (Art. 11.1) the provisions of Art. 19 should be applied.

Ex. 6. *Malus domestica* 'Mullins's Yellow Seedling' found as a chance seedling by A.H. Mullins was introduced in 1914 and renamed 'Golden Delicious' in 1916. The epithet 'Golden Delicious' is so well known that the name should not be changed in favour of the original epithet.

ARTICLE 30: RE-USE OF EPITHETS

30.1. The epithet of a cultivar, Group, or grex must not be re-used within the same denomination class for any other cultivar, Group, or grex unless re-use of the cultivar, Group, or grex epithet is accepted by an appropriate International Cultivar Registration Authority.

Note 1. An epithet might also be re-used if such re-use is authorized under the regulations of a statutory plant registration authority.

30.2. An International Cultivar Registration Authority may only accept re-use of a cultivar, Group or grex epithet if that authority is satisfied that the original cultivar, Group, or grex *(a)* is no longer in cultivation, and *(b)* has ceased to exist as breeding material, and *(c)* may not be found in a gene or seed bank, and *(d)* is not a known

component in the pedigree of other cultivars, Groups, or grexes, and *(e)* the name has rarely been used in publications, and *(f)* re-use is unlikely to cause confusion.

30.3. In the event that there is an objection to an epithet being accepted for re-use by an International Cultivar Registration Authority, the IUBS International Commission for the Nomenclature of Cultivated Plants may be asked to give a definitive ruling. In such cases the Secretary of that Commission must be provided with sufficient information to enable the Commission to make its ruling.

30.4. An epithet whose re-use has been accepted by an International Cultivar Registration Authority may never be re-used subsequently in that denomination class.

30.5. If the same cultivar epithet has been applied to more than one cultivar within a denomination class (Art. 6.1) application of each name is to be made precise by appending a device such as the name of the raiser with or without the date of introduction or the date of the name (see also Art. 21.7). Appending such a device to a name does not necessarily imply that a name is regarded as accepted (Art. 11.1)

> *Ex. 1.* *Tulipa* 'Liberty' was established by Krelage & Son before 1926, but the name was also established by P. Vooren for another cultivar in 1988. The names might be written *Tulipa* 'Liberty' [Krelage, pre-1926] and *Tulipa* 'Liberty' [Vooren, 1988] to avoid confusion.
>
> *Ex. 2.* By adding the names of the raiser in round brackets (parentheses), *Rhododendron* 'Madonna' (Brooks) and *R.* 'Madonna' (Gable) may be distinguished.

ARTICLE 31: REJECTION OF NAMES

31.1. Names governed by this *Code* are to be rejected and are not to be used if they are contrary to the Rules of this *Code* (but see Art. 11.4–11.7, Art. 19.1 and Art. 29.2–29.3).

31.2. Notwithstanding Art. 31.1, the name of a cultivar accepted and published by a statutory plant registration authority, even if using alternative terms (Art. 2.2, Note 4), must not be rejected under the provisions of this *Code*.

> *Ex. 1.* Rose Ausburton was published by the United States Patent and Trademark Office under Patent Number 8838 dated July 19th, 1994 with the applicant's declaration that it was a "new and distinct variety". Although the word "cultivar" does not appear in the publication of grant of patent, (Art. 2.2, Note 4) the cultivar name is to be taken as Rose 'Ausburton' and may not be rejected.
>
> *Ex. 2.* *Chrysanthemum* 'Dewhite Improved' was established under the provisions for Plant

Breeders' Rights in the Netherlands, 23 January 1996 (Grant No 15798). Although the cultivar epithet is contrary to Art. 21.17 of this *Code*, the name may not be rejected.

31.3. If an established name is subsequently successfully challenged as being in conflict with a prior right such as use of a trademark or the known name or abbreviation of an intergovernmental or international organization that is itself excluded from trademark protection by international convention, the established name is to be rejected and a replacement name provided.

Ex. 3. Parkway® is a trademark accepted under number 1405184 by the United States Patent and Trademark Office on 8 December 1986 as being owned by J. Frank Schmidt & Son Co. for use in marketing "cultivated deciduous trees". Should that company or its assignees succeed in objecting to the use of "Parkway" as part of a cultivar or Group name, a replacement cultivar or Group name will have to be established.

Ex. 4. Glendoick Gardens Ltd was registered as the "proprietor" of Glendoick® by the Patent Office, UK on 19 February 1999 for use in "agricultural, horticultural, and forestry products; seeds; natural plants, and flowers; propagation material for plants; fresh fruits, and vegetables". Any cultivar, Group or grex name established since that date and employing the word "Glendoick" may be challenged and may have to be rejected.

Ex. 5. Cultivar names containing the words "United Nations", and "World Bank", or the acronyms "UNESCO" or "WIPO" may have to be rejected since they represent names of organizations whose names are themselves excluded from trademark protection pursuant to Art. 6*ter* (1)(*b*) of the Paris Convention for the Protection of Industrial Property.

31.4. A cultivar, Group, or grex name is to be rejected if its publication is against the expressed wish of its raiser or breeder.

Ex. 6. *Coprosma* 'The Shiner' was originally published with the epithet 'Shiner' against the wishes of its raiser who had distributed the plant with his preferred name. The raiser's preferred name was established by L.J. Metcalf in *The Cultivation of New Zealand Trees and Shrubs* ed. 3, 96. 1987.

Ex. 7. × *Coryhopea* Butler's Balzac grex was established for the artificial cross *Coryanthes macrantha* × *Stanhopea wardii*. Following an objection to the name from the original hybridizer of the grex, that name was rejected in favour of the hybridizer's choice, × *Coryhopea* Off the Wall grex (see *Orchid Rev. Suppl*. 110: 110. 2002).

31.5. Where, under the provisions of earlier editions of this *Code*, a name has been rejected and a replacement name has been provided, the rejected name may not now be accepted under the provisions of this *Code*.

Ex. 8. *Erica cinerea* 'Lily' was rejected by the International Cultivar Registration Authority for *Erica* because it contravened Art. 17.13 of the 1995 edition of this *Code*. *E. cinerea* 'Lily Evelyn' was published as a replacement name (see: *International Register of*

Heather Names 1(3): 42. 2000) and this later name may not now be displaced in favour of the rejected name for reasons of priority (Art. 11.1) under the present Art. 21.22.

Ex. 9. In 1976 the Shibamichi Kanjiro Co., Angyo, Japan, introduced a *Styrax* under the name "Benibana Ego-no-ki" which might be considered to be a cultivar name. The word "benibana" means "red-flowered" in English and "ego-no-ki" is the Romanized writing of the Japanese common name for *Styrax japonica*. Under Art. 17.11 of the 1995 edition of this *Code* the word "benibana" on its own could not form a cultivar epithet. *Styrax japonica* 'Pink Chimes' had been established as a replacement name for this cultivar (*Arnoldia* 43(4): 17. 1983) and this later name is not to be displaced by *S. japonica* 'Benibana' for reasons of priority.

31.6. A cultivar name whose epithet is in a language other than Latin and that exactly duplicates another in the denomination class to which it is assigned is to be rejected. A replacement name may be established unless the provisions of Art. 30 (re-use of names) are applied (but see Art. 31.2).

31.7. A replacement name that is superfluous on its establishment is to be rejected.

Ex. 10. In 1942, Harlan Kelsey and William Dayton (*Standardized Plant Names*, ed. 2: 507) proposed the name *Quercus robur* 'Golden' to replace the well-established name *Q. robur* 'Concordia' Kirchn. (1864). The later name is superfluous and is to be rejected.

31.8. If it is thought that a cultivar, Group, or grex epithet might cause undue offence, an application may be made to the IUBS International Commission for the Nomenclature of Cultivated Plants to rule on whether that epithet is to be rejected.

Note 1. The basis for any proposal for rejection must be provided for the Secretary of the IUBS International Commission for the Nomenclature of Cultivated Plants at the time of application. This must include reference to any publications that support the application, with copies wherever possible. The decision of the Commission shall be published; rejection becomes effective from the date of publication of the Commission's ruling.

CHAPTER VIII: TRANSLATION, TRANSLITERATION, AND TRANSCRIPTION

ARTICLE 32: TRANSLATION OF EPITHETS

32.1. When a cultivar or grex name appears in a publication using a different language from that of its original publication, the epithet may not be translated (it may however be transliterated (Art. 33) or transcribed (Art. 34)).

Ex. 1. The cultivar epithet for the kohlrabi *Brassica oleracea* 'Nichtschiessender' may not be translated.

Ex. 2. A cultivar name with the epithet 'Owen Glendower' (a legendary character from Welsh history) may not have its epithet altered to 'Owain Glyndwr', even though the latter is the preferred spelling in the Welsh language.

Note 1. Notwithstanding Art. 32.1, when for marketing reasons a cultivar or grex epithet has been translated into a different language, the translated epithet is to be regarded as a trade designation (Art. 13.1). However, this should be avoided when the resulting trade designation replicates an existing epithet in the denomination class concerned (see Appendix X).

Ex. 3. For marketing purposes, *Hibiscus syriacus* 'L'Oiseau Bleu' might have *H. syriacus* BLUE BIRD as a trade designation in which case the name could be styled *H. syriacus* BLUE BIRD ('L'Oiseau Bleu'); *Clematis* BLUE ANGEL ('Błękitny Anioł'), and *Cucumis sativus* NOA'S FORCING ('Noas Treib') are to be considered trade designations since they have been translated from their original language.

32.2. When established in a language other than Latin, the epithet of the name of a Group may be translated. Only one such equivalent epithet may exist in each modern language.

Ex. 4. *F. sylvatica* Purple-leaved Group (in English) may be translated as *F. sylvatica* Groupe à Feuilles Pourpres (in French), *F. sylvatica* Purpurblätterige Gruppe (in German), and *F. sylvatica* Gruppo con Foglie Purpuree (in Italian).

Ex. 5. *Brassica oleracea* Brussels Sprout Group (in English) may be translated as *B. oleracea* Groupe du Chou de Bruxelles (in French) and *B. oleracea* Rosenkohl Gruppe (in German).

Note 2. If a Group epithet is in Latin form (Art. 3.3), it may not be translated. However, an alternative Group epithet in a language other than Latin may be established under Art. 11.5.

Recommendation 32A

32A.1. When publishing a new Group name which is derived from an existing Group name in another modern language (Art. 32.2) it is strongly recommended that a reference is given to the publication where the original name was used.

Ex. 6. *Cucurbita* Kabocha-Gruppen (in Swedish) was derived from *C.* Kabocha Group with reference to Hanelt, *Mansfeld's Encyclopedia of Agricultural and Horticultural Crops.* 2001.

ARTICLE 33: TRANSLITERATION OF EPITHETS

33.1. If a cultivar, Group, or grex epithet in one alphabetic script needs to be rendered in another alphabetic script, it may be transliterated character by character (see also Rec. 27F).

Note 1. Reverse transliterations may lead to inconsistencies.

Recommendation 33A

33A.1. For transliteration to or from different alphabetic scripts one of which employs the Roman alphabet, it is recommended that one of the following standards should be used: *(a)* the *ALA-LC Romanization Tables* published by the United States Library of Congress, or *(b)* the International Organization for Standardization (ISO) transliteration standards. Within any one publication the system of transliteration used should be the same.

Note 2. The 1997 edition of the *ALA-LC Romanization Tables* [1] contains 54 Romanization schemes covering more than 150 languages written in various non-Roman scripts.

Note 3. The ISO has over 17,000 International Standards[2] on a variety of subjects; those on transliteration fall under the International Classification for Standards, "ICS 01.140.10: Writing and transliteration".

Ex. 1. When transliterated into a Roman script using the *ALA-LC Romanization Tables*, the Russian epithets (in Cyrillic script) 'Белоснежка' and 'Голубое Веретено' become 'Belosnezhka' and 'Goluboe Vereteno' respectively.

---

[1] *The American Library Association - Library of Congress Romanization Tables* may be electronically downloaded from http://www.loc.gov/catdir/cpso/roman.html

[2] The ISO International Standards can be searched for transliteration standards online: http://www.iso.org/iso/iso_catalogue.htm

Ex. 2. When transliterated into a Roman script using ISO 9: 1995, the Russian epithets (in Cyrillic script) 'Белоснежка' and 'Голубое Веретено' become 'Belosnežka' and 'Goluboe Vereteno' respectively.

ARTICLE 34: TRANSCRIPTION OF EPITHETS

34.1. If a cultivar, Group or grex epithet in a non-alphabetic script needs to be rendered in an alphabetic script it may be transcribed (see also Rec. 27F).

Note 1. Reverse transcription may lead to inconsistencies.

Recommendation 34A

34A.1. It is recommended that within any one publication the systems of transcription used are used consistently. This means that the original transcription used may be modified if based upon a different system when adopted by a later author.

34A.2. Where the epithet is taken into a non-alphabetic script from another language, the cultivar name may be established in a form which renders that word or phrase into the non-alphabetic script publication, but when rendered in an alphabetic script should be in its original form where known, and not a transcription of the epithet (published in the non-alphabetic script) (see also Rec. 27D.3).

Ex. 1. The Japanese cultivar epithet 'アルプス乙女' (an apple cultivar) comprises the non-Japanese word "Alps" and the Japanese word "Otome" (girl). When rendered in an English language publication it should be given as 'Alps Otome' and not 'Arupusu Otome' as it would be transcribed. Similarly the Japanese epithet 'シルクロード' for a *Camellia* cultivar, is derived from the non-Japanese phrase "Silk Road", should be rendered in an English language publication as 'Silk Road' and not 'Shiruku-rōdo' as it would be transcribed.

34A.3. When a cultivar or grex name appears in a publication in a language that uses a non-alphabetic script different from that of its original publication, the original, or the Roman transcribed epithet, should be used whenever possible.

Ex. 2. The cultivar name established in Korean, *Hibiscus syriacus* '한보라', if added to a Chinese publication the epithet should either be included in Korean as '한보라', or transcribed into Roman script as 'Hanbora', rather than solely being included in Chinese as '韩宝拉'.

Recommendation 34B

34B.1. Transcription of Chinese characters (Hanzi) into a script employing the Roman alphabet should be by the Hanyu Pinyin Fang'an ("Hanyu Pinyin" or "Pinyin" for short) system of Romanization, but the tone marks may be omitted for simplicity.

Ex. 3. *Prunus mume* cultivar epithets in Chinese '雪海宫粉', '艳红照水', and '早玉蝶'are transcribed as 'Xuehai Gongfen' (snow sea palace pink), 'Yanhong Zhaoshui' (brilliant red reflected in water), and 'Zao Yudie' (early jade butterfly) respectively (see: *Annual Report of International Mei* (Prunus mume) *Register (2000)*).

Recommendation 34C

34C.1. Transcription of Korean characters (Hangeul) into a script employing the Roman alphabet should be by the system of Romanization contained in Proclamation 2000-8 of the Ministry of Culture and Tourism, Republic of Korea.

Ex. 4. Using this system of Romanization, the epithets '한겨레', '한보라', and '한소미' in Hangeul for *Hibiscus syriacus* cultivars would transcribe as 'Hangyeore', 'Hanbora', and 'Hansomi' respectively.

Ex. 5. When spoken in Korean, the epithet '댄싱스완' for a *Lycoris* cultivar sounds like "dancing swan". When transcribed into Roman script using the recommended standard, the name is *Lycoris* 'Daensing Seuwan' (see *Korean Journ. Hort. Sci. Techn.* 21. suppl. 1: 99. 2003).

Recommendation 34D

34D.1. Transcription of Japanese characters (Kanji, Hiragana, and Katakana) into a script employing the Roman alphabet (Romaji) should be by the modified Hepburn system of Romanization as laid out in the *ALA-LC Romanization Tables* and employed in Kenkyusha's New Japanese-English Dictionary (edition 3 and later).

Note 2. Kenkyusha's New Japanese-English Dictionary differs from the *ALA-LC Romanization Tables* in its presentation of the transcribed names by using hyphens. This *Code* follows the presentation of that Dictionary and uses hyphens to separate the different word elements.

Ex. 6. The epithet '天の川' partly in Kanji, 'あまのがわ' in Hiragana, and 'アマノガワ' in Katakana for the *Prunus* cultivar would each transcribe as 'Ama-no-gawa'; the epithet 'にいがたのゆき' in Hiragana for the *Hepatica* cultivar would transcribe as 'Niigata-no-yuki'; the epithet 'こくりゅうにしき' in Hiragana for the *Paeonia* cultivar would transcribe as 'Kokuryū-nishiki'; the epithet 'たきにおい' in Hiragana for the *Prunus* cultivar would transcribe as 'Taki-nioi'; the epithet 'とうげん' in Hiragana for the *Tricyrtis* cultivar would transcribe as 'Tōgen'.

Ex. 7. The epithet 'おうごんせとうち' in Hiragana or 'オウゴンセトウチ' in Katakana for the *Hosta* cultivar would transcribe as 'Ōgon-Setouchi'; the epithet 'おおなみせいかい' in Hiragana for the *Neofinetia* cultivar would transcribe as 'Ōnami-seikai'; the epithet 'ちょうしゅうひざくら' in Hiragana or 'チョウシュウヒザクラ' in Katakana for the *Prunus* cultivar

would transcribe as ‘Chōshū-hizakura’; the epithet ‘こじょうのまい’ in Hiragana or ‘コジョウノマイ’ in Katakana for the *Prunus* cultivar would transcribe as ‘Kojō-no-mai’.

34D.2. If a diacritical mark is used to indicate when a vowel is to be pronounced long in Romanized epithets transcribed from Kanji, Hiragana, or Katakana, then the macron (overscore) is to be used and not the circumflex or any other diacritical mark.

Ex. 8. The epithet of *Prunus* ‘Chōshū-hizakura’ is not to be written as ‘Chôshû-hizakura’.

CHAPTER IX: SPELLING (ORTHOGRAPHY)

ARTICLE 35: SPELLING OF EPITHETS

35.1. The correct spelling of epithets in Latin form that were originally published under the provisions of the *ICN* but that are subsequently used as cultivar, Group or grex epithets (Art. 21.5 of this *Code*) is to be determined in accordance with the provisions of Art. 60 of the *ICN*.

35.2. The correct spelling (orthography) of an epithet in a language other than Latin is that as provided on its establishment (Art. 27.1). For cultivar, Group, or grex epithets originally in languages using non-Roman alphabets or characters, the original scripts are the basis for correcting any spelling mistakes or other orthographical irregularities in transliterations, transcriptions or translations (see also Art. 32, Art. 33 and Art. 34).

Ex. 1. The epithet in the Chinese cultivar name *Prunus mume* '红艳宫粉' was transcribed as 'Hong'yan Gongfen', where the apostrophe is superfluous; the epithet in Roman script is to be corrected to 'Hongyan Gongfen', taking the original script in Chinese characters as the basis (see: *Annual Report of International Mei* (Prunus mume) *Register (2000)*).

35.3. Notwithstanding Art. 35.2, an unintentional mistake in the original spelling (orthography) of a cultivar, Group, or grex epithet is to be corrected.

Ex. 2. *Rhododendron* 'Sherbrook', registered with the International Cultivar Registration Authority for *Rhododendron* in 1983, was corrected by that authority to *R.* 'Sherbrooke' upon realization that the name of the place after which the cultivar was named has the latter spelling.

Ex. 3. *Philadelphus* 'Deberoux' was corrected to *P.* 'Debureaux' on realization that the cultivar was named after Monsieur Gérard Debureaux (see *The Sport* 29: 11. 2002).

Ex. 4. *Argyranthemum* 'Qinta White' must not be changed to 'Quinta White' as the original spelling of the epithet was deliberate; the epithet of *Calluna vulgaris* 'Redgauntlet' must not be divided into two words as the use of a single word was intentional; *Pinus sylvestris* 'Hexguld' was deliberately so published and is not to be altered to *P. sylvestris* 'Häxguld' even though the derivation of the epithet was stated at the time of publication as being from the Swedish word for "witches' gold".

35.4. Accents and other diacritical marks are to be retained in cultivar, Group, and grex epithets, except as provided for under Art. 35.5 and Rec. 34B.

35.5. The diaeresis indicating that a vowel is to be pronounced separately from the preceding vowel may be omitted.

Ex. 5. The cultivar epithets ‘Chloë’ and ‘Zoë’ may be written as ‘Chloe’ and ‘Zoe’.

35.6. Accents and other diacritical marks apart from the diaeresis may be added in epithets if it is thought that demands of linguistic custom are better served when they are added.

Ex. 6. The names *Aster amellus* ‘Veilchenkoenigin’ and *Phlox paniculata* ‘Kirchenfuerst’, which were originally published without diacritical marks, in these cases umlauts, may be written *Aster amellus* ‘Veilchenkönigin’ and *Phlox paniculata* ‘Kirchenfürst’ respectively.

Ex. 7. The cultivar epithet of *Syringa* × *hyacinthiflora* ‘La Canada’ was changed to ‘La Cañada’ on realization that the cultivar was named after a place named La Cañada (now City of La Cañada Flintridge), California, USA.

35.7. The ligatures “*æ*” and “*œ*” indicating that the letters are pronounced together are to be transcribed as the separate letters “*ae*” and “*oe*” respectively.

35.8. The German letter “ß” in an epithet may be transcribed as “ss”; the ampersand “&” is to be transcribed as “and” or its equivalent in other languages according to the language used in the publication where establishment took place; the symbol # when meaning “number” in an epithet is either to be written with the contraction “No” or the equivalent abbreviation in other languages or to be spelled in full according to the language used in the publication where establishment took place.

35.9. Cultivar, Group, and grex epithets or parts of such epithets must not be abbreviated (except as provided under Art. 15.2 and Art. 16.1). An exception is allowed for such epithets that include words and forms of address normally abbreviated in accordance with linguistic custom. The use of such abbreviations is optional and if desired the abbreviated word may be spelled in full according to the language used in the publication where establishment took place; the two variants are treated as equivalent epithets.

Ex. 8. *Astrantia major* ‘Sunningdale Variegated’ established by G.S. Thomas in *The modern florilegium* ed. 3: 11. 1966 must not be abbreviated to *A. major* ‘Sunningdale Var.’.

Ex. 9. *Nerium* ‘Professeur Durand’ and *Cedrus* ‘Mount Saint Catherine’ may be written as *Nerium* Prof. Durand’ and *Cedrus* ‘Mt St Catherine’ respectively; when the epithets in *Clematis* ‘Ed. André’ and *Nymphaea* ‘Dr Florence’ are written in full they must be as *Clematis* ‘Edouard André’ and *Nymphaea* ‘Docteur Florence’ respectively since the language of the publication in which both names were established was French.

35.10. Notwithstanding Art. 35.9, a cultivar, Group, or grex epithet originally established using the initials of personal names must not have those initials spelled out in full.

Ex. 10. *Crocus chrysanthus* 'E.A. Bowles' may not be changed to *C. chrysanthus* 'Edward Augustus Bowles'; the epithet 'M. Charles Coëz' may not be expanded unless under Art. 35.9 the "M." means Monsieur, as in the *Dianthus* cultivar, in which case the equivalent epithet 'Monsieur Charles Coëz' may be used; *Picea pungens* 'J. James' is not to be altered to *P. pungens* 'Jesse James' even though the epithet is known to commemorate a famous character from American history.

35.11. Unless linguistic custom demands, hyphenated cultivar, Group, and grex epithets in words other than Latin may not be changed to single words or separate words unless correcting a grammatical error or an error in original spelling (Art. 35.3).

Ex. 11. *Narcissus* 'Commander-in-Chief' may not be changed to *N.* 'Commander in Chief'.

Note 1. Hyphenated words in a Roman transcription of a non-alphabetic language may be changed to single words or separated words or vice versa according to the transcription method (see Rec. 34A.1 and Rec. 34D.1 Note 2) when the hyphenation method of that language is not well standardized.

Ex. 12. *Prunus* 'Hakusan-hata-zakura' may also be written as *P.* 'Hakusan Hata Zakura'.

35.12. Unless linguistic custom demands otherwise, the second and subsequent elements of a hyphenated word are to start with a lower case letter.

Ex. 13. *Achimenes* 'Show-off'; *Alonsoa warscewiczii* 'Peachy-keen'; *Crocus chrysanthus* 'Eye-catcher; *Galanthus* 'Celia Blakeway-Phillips'; *Pelargonium* 'Chi-Chi' (a famous panda); *Erica* × *williamsii* 'Cow-y-Jack' (a place in Cornwall, England); *Fuchsia* 'Shangri-La'; *Hedera helix* 'Baden-Baden'; *Nymphaea* 'Gloire du Temple-sur-Lot'; *Narcissus* 'Commander-in-Chief'; *Rhododendron* 'Tri-Lights' (a member of *R.* Northern Lights Group).

Ex. 14. *Carex* 'Yodo-no-yuki' (the epithet meaning "the snows of Yodo"); *Prunus* 'Beni-chidori' (the epithet meaning "crimson plover"); *Saxifraga fortunei* 'Akane-Fuji' (the epithet meaning "rose madder Mount Fuji").

35.13. For purposes of consistency, unless linguistic custom demands otherwise, when a cultivar, Group, or grex epithet contains a possessive noun in the singular, the apostrophe together with the letter "s" is to be written after the noun. When the epithet contains a possessive noun in the plural, the apostrophe is to be written after the plural noun.

Ex. 15. 'Anne's Gold' (named after someone called Anne); 'Mrs Parris's Gold' (named after Mrs Parris); 'Nelsons' Garden' (named after the garden of Mr and Mrs Nelson); 'Richards' Blue' (named after Mr and Mrs Richards).

Ex. 16. Following traditional German linguistic custom 'Kramers Rote' (named after

someone called Kramer) does not take an apostrophe but 'Klaus' Weisse' (after someone called Klaus) does.

35.14. An apparent erroneous use of an apostrophe or hyphen in a cultivar, Group, or grex epithet may only be corrected after examination of the derivation of the words concerned.

Ex. 17. *Hosta* 'Shelley's' and *Osteospermum* 'Hopley's' are to be corrected to *H*. 'Shelleys' and *O*. 'Hopleys' respectively since neither is named after people; *Monarda* 'Marshalls Delight' is to be corrected to *M*. 'Marshall's Delight' upon realization that the cultivar was named in honour of Henry H. Marshall, plant breeder in Canada (*HortScience* 24(3): 525. 1989).

Ex. 18. *Rhododendron* 'Terra-Cotta' was corrected to *R*. 'Terracotta' as it has been determined that the cultivar was named after the colour of its flowers and not after a proper name Terra-Cotta.

Ex. 19. *Polypodium vulgare* 'Bifido-cristatum' is to be corrected to *P. vulgare* 'Bifidocristatum'.

Recommendation 35A

35A.1. The liberty of correcting the spelling of a cultivar, Group, or grex epithet should be used with reserve, especially if the change affects the first syllable and above all the first letter of such an epithet.

Recommendation 35B

35B.1. It is recommended that for purposes of consistency, when a cultivar, Group, or grex epithet contains a word that is an abbreviation, the period (full-stop) is added after the abbreviation unless that abbreviation is an acronym (a pronounceable word derived from initial letters of a series of words that comprise a name), an initialism (a word derived from initial letters of a series of words or phrase each one of which is spoken individually), a blend (a novel word derived from combining parts of other words), or a contraction (an abbreviation that shortens a word by removing one or more of its middle letters) in which cases the period should not be applied.

Ex. 20. In English the word "Professor" when abbreviated is written Prof., whereas the words "Doctor", "Mister", and "Saint" when abbreviated are written Dr, Mr, and St respectively, their abbreviations being contractions.

Ex. 21. 'G.K. Chesterton'; 'Mrs M.L. Bland'; 'MCC' (an initialism representing Marylebone Cricket Club and not a Roman numeral); 'USS Enterprise' (where USS is an initialism representing "United Star Ship"); 'Pride of NASA' (where NASA is an acronym for National Aeronautical and Space Agency); 'City Smog' and 'Brunch Time' (where smog and brunch are blends).

DIVISION III: NAMES OF HYBRID GENERA

1. The formation of names for hybrids between members of different genera is governed by the provisions of the *ICN*. These provisions are summarized here for ease of reference but the text of the current edition of the *ICN* is to be taken as definitive.

2. Hybridity is indicated by use of the multiplication sign "×", either between the names of the taxa involved (a "hybrid formula") or by assigning a name prefixed by the multiplication sign (for hybrid genera, a "condensed formula"[1]) (cf. *ICN* Art. H.6.1).

> *Note 1.* Hybridity may also be indicated by the use of the prefix "notho" with the indication of rank (see *ICN* Art. H.1.1).
>
> *Ex. 1.* *Ascocentrum* × *Rhynchostylis* × *Vanda* is a hybrid formula; × *Vascostylis* is the condensed formula for that hybrid formula.

3. For named hybrids (i.e. with a condensed formula), the multiplication sign × belongs with the name or epithet but is not actually part of it, and the *ICN* recommends (*ICN* Rec. H.3A) that its placement should reflect that relation. The exact amount of space, if any, between the multiplication sign and the initial letter of the name or epithet should depend on what best serves readability. The multiplication sign "×" in a hybrid formula is always placed between, and separate from, the names of the parents (cf. *ICN* Art. H.1.1 and H.3.1 + H.3A). If the mathematical symbol is not available, it should be approximated by a lower-case letter "x" (not italicized).

4. The name for a hybrid genus arising from a cross between members of two genera is a condensed formula in which the names adopted for the parental genera are combined into a single word, using the first part or the whole of one, the last part or the whole of the other (but not the whole of both) and, optionally, a connecting vowel (cf. *ICN* Art. H.6.2).

> *Ex. 2.* × *Agropogon* (= *Agrostis* × *Polypogon*); × *Gymnanacamptis* (= *Anacamptis* × *Gymnadenia*); × *Alpingera* (= *Alpinia* × *Etlingera*); × *Seleniphyllum* (= *Epiphyllum* × *Selenicereus*); × *Rhaphiobotrya* (= *Rhaphiolepis* × *Eriobotrya*).

---

[1]Names given to hybrids between species or between infraspecific taxa are not condensed formulae but must conform with all the provisions of the *ICN* for names of the equivalent rank.

Ex. 3. × *Amarcrinum* is correct for *Amaryllis* × *Crinum*, not "× *Crindonna*". The latter condensed formula was proposed for the same hybrid genus, but was formed from the generic name adopted for one parent (*Crinum*) and a synonym (*Belladonna*) of the generic name adopted for the other (*Amaryllis*); being contrary to Art. H.6 it is not validly published under *ICN* Art. 32.1(b).

Ex. 4. The name × *Leucadenia* is correct for *Leucorchis* × *Gymnadenia*, but if the generic name *Pseudorchis* is adopted instead of *Leucorchis*, × *Pseudadenia* is correct.

5. The name for a hybrid genus derived from four or more genera is formed from the name of an individual to which is added the suffix *-ara*. No such name may exceed eight syllables. Such a name is regarded as a condensed formula (cf. *ICN* Art. H.6.3).

Ex. 5. × *Beallara* (= *Brassia* × *Cochlioda* × *Miltonia* × *Odontoglossum*); × *Brilliandeara* (*Aspasia* × *Brassia* × *Cochlioda* × *Miltonia* × *Odontoglossum* × *Oncidium*).

6. The name for a hybrid genus derived from three genera is either *(a) a* condensed formula in which the three names adopted for the parental genera are combined into a single word not exceeding eight syllables, using the whole or first part of one, followed by the whole or any part of another, followed by the whole or last part of the third (but not the whole of all three) and, optionally, one or two connecting vowels, or *(b)* a name formed from the name of an individual to which is added the suffix *-ara* provided that the resulting name does not exceed eight syllables (cf. *ICN* Art. H.6.4).

Ex. 6. × *Sophrolaeliocattleya* (= *Cattleya* × *Laelia* × *Sophronitis*); × *Vascostylis* (= *Ascocentrum* × *Rhynchostylis* × *Vanda*); × *Rodrettiopsis* (= *Comparettia* × *Ionopsis* × *Rodriguezia*); × *Devereuxara* (= *Ascocentrum* × *Phalaenopsis* × *Vanda*); × *Wilsonara* (= *Cochlioda* × *Odontoglossum* × *Oncidium*).

7. The *ICN* recommends that when a hybrid generic name is formed from the name of an individual by adding the suffix *-ara*, the individual should preferably be a collector, grower or student of the group (cf. *ICN* Rec. H.6A.1.).

8. When a condensed formula is derived from names of genera, the parental names used in its formation must be those that are accepted by the author of the condensed formula as correct for the parental taxa (cf. *ICN* Art. H.8.1).

Ex. 7. If the genus *Triticum* is interpreted on taxonomic grounds as including *Triticum* (in the strict sense) and *Agropyron*, and the genus *Hordeum* as including *Hordeum* (in the strict sense) and *Elymus*, then hybrids between *Agropyron* and *Elymus* as well as between *Triticum* (in the strict sense) and *Hordeum* (in the strict sense) are placed in the same hybrid genus, × *Tritordeum*. If, however, *Agropyron* is separated generically from *Triticum*, hybrids between *Agropyron* and *Hordeum* (in either the strict sense or the wider sense) are placed in the hybrid

genus × *Agrohordeum*. Similarly, if *Elymus* is separated generically from *Hordeum*, hybrids between *Elymus* and *Triticum* (in either the strict sense or the wider sense) are placed in the hybrid genus × *Elymotriticum*. If both *Agropyron* and *Elymus* are given generic rank, hybrids between them are placed in the hybrid genus × *Agroelymus*; × *Tritordeum* is then restricted to hybrids between *Hordeum* (in the strict sense) and *Triticum* (in the strict sense), and hybrids between *Elymus* and *Hordeum* are placed in × *Elyhordeum*.

9. Names of hybrid genera formed with *-ara* as a suffix, which are equivalent to condensed formulae, are applicable only to hybrids that are accepted taxonomically as being derived from the parents named (cf. *ICN* Art. H.8.2).

Ex. 8. If *Euanthe* is recognized as a distinct genus, hybrids simultaneously involving its only species, *E. sanderiana*, and the three genera *Arachnis*, *Renanthera*, and *Vanda* must be placed in × *Cogniauxara* (= *Arachnis* × *Euanthe* × *Renanthera* × *Vanda*). If, on the other hand, *E. sanderiana* is included in *Vanda*, the same hybrids are placed in × *Holttumara* (= *Arachnis* × *Renanthera* × *Vanda*).

10. In order to be validly published (established) the name of a hybrid genus must be effectively published (*ICN* Art. 29–31) with a statement of the names of the parent genera, but no description or diagnosis is necessary, whether in Latin, English, or in any other language (cf. *ICN* Art. H.9.1).

Ex. 9. Validly published names: × *Philageria*, published by Maxwell Masters in 1872 with a statement of parentage, *Lapageria* × *Philesia*; × *Agrohordeum*, published by Aimée Camus in 1927 (= *Agropyron* × *Hordeum*).

11. Since the names of hybrid genera are condensed formulae or are treated as such, they do not have nomenclatural types and their application is determined entirely on stated parentage (cf. *ICN* Art. H.9, Note 1).

12. For purposes of priority, names of hybrid genera are subject to the same Rules as are those of non-hybrid genera (cf. *ICN* Art. 11.9).

Ex. 10. The name × *Triticosecale* (1899) antedates × *Triticale* (1936) for the hybrids between *Secale* and *Triticum*.

13. Names of hybrid genera that appear on or after 1 January 1953 in trade catalogues or non-scientific newspapers and on or after 1 January 1973 in seed-exchange lists are not validly published (established) in those publications (cf. *ICN* Art. 30.6).

14. Names published merely in anticipation of the existence of a hybrid genus are not validly published (established) under *ICN* Art. 36.1(b) (cf. *ICN* Art. H.9, Note 2).

DIVISION IV: REGISTRATION OF NAMES

1. For the purposes of this *Code*, registration is the acceptance of a cultivar, Group, or grex name by an authority responsible for registering such names.

2. An International Cultivar Registration Authority is an organization appointed by the ISHS Special Commission for Cultivar Registration to be charged with the registration of cultivar, Group, or grex names as provided for by this *Code*. The act of registration is completed by publication of such names which also ensures their establishment where necessary (see Appendix I for a list of International Cultivar Registration Authorities).

3. A statutory plant registration authority is an organization established by national legal enactment or by international treaty, which, as part of its remit, establishes variety denominations or other names for plants (see Appendix II for a list of such statutory authorities). Names established by statutory plant registration authorities must be cited in the relevant register and checklist.

4. A name accepted by a statutory plant registration authority may not be rejected by an International Cultivar Registration Authority. If that name contravenes an article of this *Code* the International Cultivar Registration Authority is not obliged to register it but they should record it as an adopted name (see Art. 11.3 and Art. 31.2).

5. Acceptance of a cultivar or Group name by an International Cultivar Registration Authority does not imply judgement on the distinctness of that particular cultivar or Group, nor on its agricultural, horticultural or silvicultural merit.

6. An International Cultivar Registration Authority may also record trademarks if they have been used as marketing devices for cultivars, Groups, or grexes. Such marks if recorded must never be given nomenclatural status and must not appear in a publication by an International Cultivar Registration Authority in such a way that they may be confused with names or epithets.

7. The Registrar is someone appointed by an International Cultivar Registration Authority to carry out the duties of registration.

8. The registrant is the person submitting a name to an International Cultivar Registration Authority for registration.

DIVISION V: NOMENCLATURAL STANDARDS

1. A nomenclatural standard is a single item (or entity), preferably a herbarium specimen, to which the name of a cultivar or Group is permanently attached. Where duplicates of that nomenclatural standard are prepared, and separately filed, these may be referred to as duplicate standards.

Note 1. Names of taxa governed by the *ICN* are fixed by the application of a nomenclatural type. For taxa published on or after 1 January 1958 this is included in the requirements for valid publication (establishment) (*ICN* Art. 40). A nomenclatural type is designated so that there is, within the range of variation of the taxon, a precise reference point to which the name is permanently attached.

Note 2. Names of graft-chimaeric genera do not have type species and therefore no type specimen or nomenclatural standard can be designated for them, as they are defined solely on a statement of parentage.

Note 3. Many cultivars, including clones, may have variable characteristics within their circumscription and any reference to a nomenclatural standard in determining the identity of a plant must be made with this knowledge in mind.

Note 4. Names of grexes have no nomenclatural standard as they are defined solely on a statement of parentage.

2. A nomenclatural standard may have been originally nominated as a voucher specimen or as the type specimen under the provisions of the *ICN*.

Ex. 1. When P.C. de Jong first described *Betula utilis* 'Doorenbos' (*Dendroflora* 23: 26. 1986) he indicated the herbarium specimen *De Jong 1205* conserved at Utrecht University Herbarium as a voucher specimen and this may be regarded as the nomenclatural standard.

Ex. 2. *Cotoneaster* × *watereri* (Exell in *Gard. Chron*. 83: 44. 1928) is based on the nomenclatural type at the Natural History Museum, London. If *C.* × *watereri* is considered as a cultivar, the type specimen may be taken as the nomenclatural standard.

3. An image, other than one maintained digitally, may be designated as a nomenclatural standard when a specimen is not made available or when essential characteristics are best recognized from a suitable illustration.

Ex. 3. The particular flower colours of certain *Dianthus* and *Narcissus* cultivars and those of orchids might be better observed in paintings or photographic images rather than in dried herbarium specimens.

Ex. 4. A representative colour print (WSY0103774) provided by the registrant was designated the nomenclatural standard for *Delphinium* 'Cranberry Delight' by the Registrar as no herbarium material was available.

Note 5. Conditions of use under copyright should be established upon deposition of an image to be used as a nomenclatural standard or contained within a standard portfolio. Ideally an image should be without restrictions of use. Any conditions of copyright should not limit the purpose for which the image is deposited (see Principle 9).

Note 6. An image printed from a digital file may be used as a nomenclatural standard, but the digital file should be retained with a reference in the standard portfolio (Division V.10).

Note 7. An illustration in a published journal may be cited as a nomenclatural standard when appropriate.

Note 8. If a specimen later becomes available that can be shown to be from the same stock as the image, this may be placed in the standard portfolio (Division V.10).

4. If a nomenclatural type cannot be interpreted unambiguously, a nomenclatural standard may be designated in support of that type provided that designation of the nomenclatural type will always take precedence over the nomenclatural standard.

Ex. 5. The nomenclatural standard for *Dracaena fragrans* 'Massangeana' was designated as *Hetterscheid HDR21* (conserved at Herbarium Vadense, Wageningen, Netherlands) by J.J. Bos *et al*. (*Edinb. Journ. Bot*. 49(3): 329. 1993) even though the nomenclatural type for *Dracaena massangeana* hort. ex Rodigas was lectotypified in the same paper as being the plate opposite page 170, *Rev. Hort. Belge*. 8: 169. 1882.

5. The nomenclatural standard for a clonal cultivar whose name is established under the provisions of a statutory plant registration authority on or after 1 January 2004 must be prepared from the same stock as that used to support recognition of that cultivar by the statutory plant registration authority.

6. The nomenclatural standard for a seed-raised cultivar whose epithet is established under the provisions of a statutory plant registration authority on or after 1 January 2004 must be prepared from plants grown from seed deposited in and maintained by seed laboratories nominated for maintaining such germplasm under prevailing statutory provisions.

Note 9. Germplasm of a seed-raised cultivar that is maintained by such laboratories will over a period of time show slight variation and any reference to a nomenclatural standard in determining the identity of a plant must be made with this knowledge in mind.

7. Designation of a nomenclatural standard and the citation of the institution holding such a standard is effected by publication (Art. 25).

> *Note 10.* In order to be effective the word "standard" (such as "nomenclatural standard" or "standard specimen") should be included in any statement where a nomenclatural standard is designated.
>
> *Ex. 6.* The nomenclatural standard for *Rhododendron* 'Maurice Daffarn' was designated as the specimen held at the Royal Horticultural Society's Wisley Herbarium; this became the nomenclatural standard on publication of that designation in *The New Plantsman* 8(2): 126. 2001.

8. In the event that more than one nomenclatural standard has independently been designated for the same cultivar or Group, the earliest designation takes precedence.

9. A nomenclatural standard that is a dried specimen should be recognized by keeping it in a specially marked folder.

10. Where practical, nomenclatural standards should be maintained as part of a portfolio into which any specimens, illustrations, colour chart references, and other information such as a copy of the original publication of a name may be assembled for reference purposes. Where appropriate, the standard portfolio should also include details of parentage and the origins of the cultivar or Group and should cite the date and place of establishment of the name.

> *Note 11.* The precise edition of any colour chart used should be specified since there is often variation from one edition to another.

11. Duplicate standards (Division V. 1) should be circulated to other collections (see Appendix III), especially those in other countries.

12. The location of any living material from which a nomenclatural standard was prepared, and the date of its collection, should be noted with such a standard.

13. If the breeder or raiser of the cultivar or Group, its nominant, introducer, or author of its name is no longer available or willing to examine material for preparation of a nomenclatural standard, the advice of other experts should be sought in verifying material for such a standard.

14. Herbarium specimens require expert preparation and raisers of new cultivars or Groups are strongly advised to donate plant material to a recognized herbarium willing to accept such material so that suitable nomenclatural standards may be prepared.

DIVISION VI: MODIFICATION OF THIS *CODE*

This *Code* may only be modified by action of the IUBS (International Union of Biological Sciences) International Commission for the Nomenclature of Cultivated Plants. In the event of this Commission no longer being extant, an alternative body shall be appointed by IUBS.

APPENDIX I

DIRECTORY OF INTERNATIONAL CULTIVAR REGISTRATION AUTHORITIES (ICRAs)

This listing is derived from the data to be found on the webpages of the International Society for Horticultural Science (ISHS) that are devoted to ICRAs:

http://www.ishs.org/icra/index.htm

Regularly revised information, including details of electronic and paper publications, on each of the ICRAs currently appointed, along with current details of any regional representatives, may be found throughout those pages. In addition, an alphabetical search for current ICRAs may be made by genus.

Any prospective ICRA is advised to study this *Code* as well as the information found in the ICRA webpages before contacting the ISHS Commission for Nomenclature and Cultivar Registration, the body that appoints ICRAs. The Commission may be contacted through its Chairman, Dr Janet J Cubey, RHS Garden Wisley, Woking, Surrey GU23 6QB, UK (email: janetcubey@rhs.org.uk).

AFRICAN VIOLET SOCIETY OF AMERICA, INC. (AVSA)

http://www.avsa.org

ICRA: ***Saintpaulia*** H. Wendl. (1966)

Registrar: Mr Joseph J. Bruns, 1220 Stratford Lane, Hanover Park, Illinois 60103, USA

Fax: (+1) 810 314 6932
Email: jbruns@qwip.net

AGRICULTURAL UNIVERSITY OF HEBEI

ICRA: ***Ziziphus*** Mill. (2014)

Registrar: Prof. Mengjun Liu, Research Center of Chinese Jujube, Agricultural University of Hebei, 289 Lingyusi Jie, Lianchi Qu, Baoding, Hebei 071001, People's Republic of China

Fax: (+86) 312 7521456
Email: lmj1234567@aliyun.com

AMERICAN BEGONIA SOCIETY
http://www.begonias.org

ICRA: ***Begonia*** L. (1958)

Registrar: Ms Priscilla Purinton, 129 Queens River Drive, West Kingston, Rhode Island 02892, USA

Email: ppurinton@gmail.com

AMERICAN BOXWOOD SOCIETY (ABS)
http://www.boxwoodsociety.org

ICRA: ***Buxus*** L. (1966)

Registrar: Mr Lynn R. Batdorf, 6005 Kingsford Road, Bethesda, Maryland 20817, USA

Email: hollykids@comcast.net

AMERICAN FUCHSIA SOCIETY
http://www.americanfuchsiasociety.org

ICRA: ***Fuchsia*** L. (1966)

Registrar: Mr Edward M. Salome, 6979 Clark Road, Paradise, California 95969-2210, USA

Email: ejsalome@aol.com

AMERICAN HEMEROCALLIS SOCIETY
http://www.daylilies.org

ICRA: ***Hemerocallis*** L. (1955)

Registrar: Elizabeth Trotter, 421 Mt Gilead Church Road, Georgetown, Kentucky 40324, USA

Email: registrar@daylilies.org
Registration page: http://www.daylilies.org/AHSregister.html

AMERICAN HOSTA SOCIETY
http://www.americanhostasociety.org

ICRA: ***Hosta*** Tratt. (1966)

Registrar: Gayle Hartley Alley, 33001 E 155th Street, Pleasant Hill, Missouri 64080, USA

Email: hostaregistrar@gmail.com
Registration page: http://www.hostaregistrar.org

AMERICAN IRIS SOCIETY
http://www.irises.org

ICRA: ***Iris*** L., excluding bulbous species (1955)

Registrar: John I. Jones & Joanne Prass-Jones, 35572 Linda Drive, Fremont, California 94536, USA

Email: jijones@usjoneses.com
Registration page: http://www.irises.org/registration.htm

AMERICAN IVY SOCIETY (AIS)
http://www.ivy.org

ICRA: ***Hedera*** L. (1976)

Registrar: Mr Russell A. Windle, PO Box 461, Lionville, Pennsylvania 19353, USA

Email: hedera@ att.net

AMERICAN PENSTEMON SOCIETY

ICRA: ***Penstemon*** Schmidel (1966?)

Registrar: Dr Dale T. Lindgren, University of Nebraska–Lincoln, West Central Research and Extension Center, 461 West University Drive, North Platte, Nebraska 69101-7756, USA

Fax: (+1) 308 532 3823
Email: dlindgre@unlnotes.unl.edu

AMERICAN PEONY SOCIETY
http://www.americanpeonysociety.org

ICRA: ***Paeonia*** L. (1974)

Registrar: Mr Reiner Jakubowski, 624 Pineridge Road, Waterloo, Ontario N2L 5J9, Canada

Email: contact via http://www.americanpeonysociety.org/administration/contact-aps

AMERICAN PUBLIC GARDENS ASSOCIATION
http://www.publicgardens.org

ICRA: **Woody plant genera**, excluding those genera or other groups for which other ICRAs have been appointed. A full listing of the genera for which this ICRA registers cultivars may be found at http://www.ishs.org/sci/icralist/icralist.htm

Registrar: Mr Stefan Lura, US National Arboretum, 3501 New York Avenue, Washington, DC 20002-1958, USA

Fax: (+1) 202 245 5973
Email: stefan.lura@ars.usda.gov

AMERICAN ROSE SOCIETY (ARS)
http://www.ars.org

ICRA: ***Rosa*** L. (1955)

Registrar: Laura Seabaugh, American Rose Society, PO Box 30000, Shreveport, Louisiana 71130-0030, USA

Fax: (+1) 318 938 5405
Email: ars@rose.org.
Registration page: www.arsmodernroses.org

ARBORETUM KALMTHOUT FOUNDATION
http://www.hamamelis.be

ICRA: ***Hamamelis*** L. (2003)

Registrar: Ir. Abraham Rammeloo, Heuvel 2, B-2920 Kalmthout, Belgium

Fax: (+32) 3 666 33 96
Email: rammeloo@arboretumkalmthout.be

AUSTRALIAN CULTIVAR REGISTRATION AUTHORITY (ACRA)
http://www.anbg.gov.au/acra/index.html

ICRA: **Australian plant genera**, excluding those genera or groups for which other ICRAs have been appointed (1958); ***Acacia*** Mill. – all species (1958). A full listing of the genera for which this ICRA registers cultivars may be found at http://www.ishs.org/sci/icralist/icralist.htm

Registrar: Mr Paul Carmen, Australian National Botanic Gardens, GPO Box 1777, Canberra, ACT 2601, Australia

Email: acra@anbg.gov.au

BEIJING BOTANICAL GARDEN
http://www.beijingbg.com

ICRA: ***Malus*** Mill., excluding *M. domestica* Borkh. (2014)

Registrar: Prof. Ling Guo, Beijing Botanical Garden, Wofosi Lu, Xiangshan, Haidian Qu, Beijing 100093, People's Republic of China

Email: guoling@beijingbg.com

BLAHNIK, ING. ZDENĚK

ICRA: ***Lonicera*** L. (2002)

Registrar: Ing. Zdeněk Blahnik, Jungmannova 5, 25101 Ricany, Czech Republic

Fax: (+42) 0 32363 1489
Email: iil@post.cz or blahnik@cmail.cz

BROMELIAD SOCIETY INTERNATIONAL (BSI)

http://www.bsi.org

ICRA: ***Bromeliaceae*** Juss. (1980). A full listing of the genera for which this ICRA registers cultivars may be found at http://www.ishs.org/sci/icralist/icralist.htm

Registrar: Mr Geoff Lawn, 31 Greenock Ave, Como WA 6152, Australia

Email: cultivars@bsi.org
Registration page: http://www.bsi.org/brom_info/cultivar/instructions.html

BRUGMANSIA GROWERS INTERNATIONAL

www.brugmansia.us/index.html

ICRA: ***Brugmansia*** Pers. (2013); ***Datura*** L. (2013)

Registrar: Dr Alistair Hay, PO Box 1450, Nowra, New South Wales 2541, Australia

Email: alistair@alistairhay.com.au

CLIVIA SOCIETY

http://www.cliviasociety.org

ICRA: ***Clivia*** Lindl. (2000)

Registrar: Mr Kenneth R. Smith, 593 Hawkesbury Road, Winmalee, New South Wales 2777, Australia

Email: cliviasmith@idx.com.au

CONNECTICUT AGRICULTURAL EXPERIMENT STATION (CAES)

http://www.ct.gov/caes

ICRA: ***Castanea*** Mill. (1998)

Registrar: Dr Sandra L. Anagnostakis, Connecticut Agricultural Experiment Station, Box 1106, New Haven, Connecticut 06504-1106, USA

Fax: (+1) 203 974 8502
Email: sandra.anagnostakis@ct.gov

CYCLAMEN SOCIETY

http://www.cyclamen.org

ICRA: ***Cyclamen*** L., excluding *C. persicum* Mill. (1999)

Registrar: Mr Trevor D. Wiltshire, Pencarn, Gonvena, Wadebridge, Cornwall PL27 6DL, UK

Email: trevordwiltshire@gmail.com
Registration page: http://www.cyclamen.org/registrar_set.html

EASTER, MRS MARGARET
http://www.thymus.co.uk

ICRA: ***Thymus*** L. (2008)

Registrar: Mrs Margaret Easter, 23 Wroxham Way, Harpenden, Hertfordshire AL5 4PP, UK

Email: mail@thymus.co.uk

EPIPHYLLUM SOCIETY OF AMERICA (ESA)
http://www.epiphyllumsociety.org/index.html

ICRA: ***Cactaceae*** Juss. Tribe ***Hylocereeae*** F. Buxbaum (1958). A full listing of genera for which this ICRA registers cultivars may be found at http://www.ishs.org/sci/icralist/icralist.htm

Registrar: Dr Richard W. Kohlschreiber, 1801 West 27th Street, San Pedro, California 90732-4601, USA

Email: kohlpedro@gmail.com

EUROPEAN KALMIA SOCIETY
http://www.kalmia-society.org

ICRA: ***Kalmia*** L. (2008)

Registrar: Ms Julia Westhoff, c/o Stadtgrün, Willy-Brandt-Platz 7, D-28215 Bremen, Germany

Fax: (+49) 421 496 6236
Email: registrar@kalmia-society.org
Registration page: http://www.kalmia-society.org/registrar.php

GERANIACEAE GROUP

ICRA: ***Erodium*** Aiton; ***Geranium*** L. (1997)

Registrar: Mr David X. Victor, Chapel Leigh Farm House, Chapel Leigh, Lydeard St Lawrence, Taunton, Somerset TA4 3RB, UK

Email: davidxvictor@btinternet.com

GESNERIAD SOCIETY, INC.
http://www.gesneriadsociety.org

ICRA: ***Gesneriaceae*** Rich. & Juss., excluding *Saintpaulia* H. Wendl. (1958). A full listing of genera for which this ICRA registers cultivars may be found at http://www.ishs.org/sci/icralist/icralist.htm

Registrar: Irina Nicholson, 2512 South Balsam Way, Lakewood, Colorado 80227, USA

Email: hybridregistrar@gesneriadsociety.org
Registration page: http://www.gesneriadsociety.org/ir_ges/index.htm

GREEN, MR KEITH

http://www.scrapbooklithops.com

ICRA: ***Lithops*** N.E. Br. (2013)

Registrar: Mr Keith Green,
17 Tadworth Avenue,
New Malden, Surrey KT3 6DJ,
UK

Email: k.green97@btinternet.com

HARDWOOD TREE IMPROVEMENT AND REGENERATION CENTER (HTIRC)

http://www.agriculture.purdue.edu/fnr/HTIRC/index.htm

ICRA: ***Juglans*** L. (2001)

Registrar: Dr Keith Woeste,
Department of Forestry and Natural Resources, Purdue University,
Pfendler Hall, 715 West State Street,
West Lafayette, Indiana 47907-2061
USA

Fax: (+1) 765 494 9461
Email: woeste@purdue.edu

HAWORTHIA SOCIETY OF JAPAN

http://www.haworthia.net/index.html

ICRA: ***Haworthia*** Duval (including *Haworthiopsis* G.D. Rowley and *Tulista* Raf.), ***Astroloba*** Uitew. & ***Chortolirion*** A. Berger (2014).

Registrar: Dr Masahiko Hayashi,
60-B202, Michishita, Noguchi-cho,
Toyokawa, Aichi, 442-0851
Japan

Fax: (+81) 533 75 6234
Email: info@haworthia.net

HEATHER SOCIETY

http://www.heathersociety.org.uk

ICRA: ***Andromeda*** L. (1970); ***Calluna*** Salisb. (1970); ***Daboecia*** D. Don (1970); ***Erica*** L., including *Bruckenthalia* Rchb. (1970)

Registrar: Dr E. Charles Nelson,
Tippitiwitchet Cottage, Hall Road,
Outwell, Wisbech, Cambridgeshire
PE14 8PE, UK

Fax: (+44) 1945 774077
Email: admin@heathersociety.com
Registration page:
http://www.heathersociety.org/naming-heathers

HELICONIA SOCIETY INTERNATIONAL – COSTACEAE

ICRA: ***Costaceae*** Nakai (2013)

Registrar: Mr Dave Skinner, Heliconia Society International, National Tropical Botanical Garden, 3530 Papalina Road, Kalaheo, Hawaii 96741, USA

Email: cultivarregistry@heliconia.org

HELICONIA SOCIETY INTERNATIONAL – ETLINGERA

ICRA: ***Etlingera*** Giseke (2013)

Registrar: Jan Hintze, Heliconia Society International, National Tropical Botanical Garden, 3530 Papalina Road, Kalaheo, Hawaii 96741, USA

Email: cultivarregistry@heliconia.org

HELICONIA SOCIETY INTERNATIONAL – HELICONIA

http://www.heliconiasocietypr.org/cultivar_registration.htm

ICRA: ***Heliconia*** L. (2003)

Registrar: Dr Bryan R. Brunner, Dept of Horticulture Agricultural Experimental Station, HC-02 Box 11656, Lajas, Puerto Rico 00667

Fax: (+1) 787 899 1265
Email: brbrunner@yahoo.com

HOLLY SOCIETY OF AMERICA

http://www.hollysocam.org

ICRA: ***Ilex*** L. (1955)

Registrar: Mr Michael R. Pontti, 10520 Cedar Avenue, Fairfax, Virginia 22030, USA

Fax: (+1) 202 687 9127
Email: ponttim@georgetown.edu

INDIAN AGRICULTURAL RESEARCH INSTITUTE (IARI) – BOUGAINVILLEA

http://www.iari.res.in

ICRA: ***Bougainvillea*** Comm. ex Juss. (1966)

Registrar: Dr T. Janakiram, Division of Floriculture and Landscaping, Indian Agricultural Research Institute (IARI), Pusa Campus, New Delhi 110 012, India

Fax: (+91) 11 2584 6420
Email: tolety07@gmail.com or headflori@iari.res.in

INDIAN AGRICULTURAL RESEARCH INSTITUTE (IARI) – MANGO

http://www.iari.res.in

ICRA: ***Mangifera indica*** L. (mango) (1970)

Registrar: Dr Sanjay Kumar Singh, Principal Scientist & Professor, Division of Fruits and Horticultural Technology, ICAR-Indian Agricultural Research Institute, New Delhi 110012, India

Email: sanjaydr2@gmail.com

INTERNATIONAL AROID SOCIETY (IAS)

http://www.aroid.org

ICRA: ***Araceae*** Adans., excluding *Calla* L. & *Zantedeschia* Spreng. (?1980). A full listing of genera for which this ICRA registers cultivars may be found at http://www.ishs.org/sci/icralist/icralist.htm

Registrar: Dr Derek Burch, International Aroid Society (IAS), 4044 W 4th Street, Plantation, Florida 33317, USA.

Email: derekburch23@gmail.com

INTERNATIONAL CAMELLIA SOCIETY

http://www.internationalcamellia.org

ICRA: ***Camellia*** L. (1962)

Registrar: Prof. Wang Zhonglang, Kunming Institute of Botany, Chinese Academy of Sciences, 132 Lanhei Road, Kunming, Yunnan 650204, People's Republic of China

Fax: (+86) 871 6515 0227
Email: wang@mail.kib.ac.cn

INTERNATIONAL CARNIVOROUS PLANT SOCIETY (I.C.P.S.)

http://www.carnivorousplants.org

ICRA: ***Byblidaceae*** Domin; ***Cephalotaceae*** Dumort.; ***Dioncophyllaceae*** Airy Shaw; ***Droseraceae*** Salisb.; ***Drosophyllaceae*** Chrtek, Slaviková & Studnicka; ***Lentibulariaceae*** Rich.; ***Martyniaceae*** Stapf; ***Nepenthaceae*** Dumort.; ***Roridulaceae*** Engl. & Gilg; ***Sarraceniaceae*** Dumort. (1998). A full list of genera for which this ICRA registers cultivars may be found at http://www.ishs.org/sci/icralist/icralist.htm

Registrar: Dr Jan Schlauer, International Registrar, ICPS, Inc., 2121 N. California Blvd, Suite 290, Walnut Creek, California 94596-7351, USA

Email: ira@carnivorousplants.org
Registration page: http://www.carnivorousplants.org/cultivars/cultivarsmain.html

INTERNATIONAL CULTIVAR REGISTRATION CENTER FOR BAMBOOS (ICRCB)

ICRA: ***Poaceae*** Barnh., subfamily ***Bambusoideae*** Luerss. (2013). A full listing of the genera for which this ICRA registers cultivars may be found at http://www.ishs.org/sci/icralist/icralist.htm and under the denomination class listings in Appendix V.

Registrar: Prof. Junyi Shi, Research Institute of Resources Insects, Chinese Academy of Forestry, Bailongsi, Panlong Qu, Kunming, Yunnan 650216, People's Republic of China

Email: esjy@163.com or 1115651892@qq.com

INTERNATIONAL CULTIVAR REGISTRATION CENTER FOR OSMANTHUS (ICRCO)

http://icrco.njfu.edu.cn/englishweb/e_index.htm

ICRA: ***Osmanthus*** Lour. (2004)

Registrar: Prof. Qibai Xiang (C.B. Shang), Nanjing Forestry University, 159 Longpan Lu, Xuanwu Qu, Nanjing, Jiangsu 210037, People's Republic of China

Fax: (+86) 25 85427093
Email: xiangqb@njfu.com.cn or shangcb@sohu.com

INTERNATIONAL HIBISCUS SOCIETY, INC.

http:// www.internationalhibiscussociety.org

ICRA: ***Hibiscus rosa-sinensis*** L. and its hybrids (2013)

Registrar: Mr Ian Rabenda, 233 Montrose Avenue, Hamilton, Ontario L8K 4Z1, Canada

Email: box1618@gmail.com
Registration page: http://www.internationalhibiscussociety.org/SEArchive/form.php

INTERNATIONAL MAPLE SOCIETY

ICRA: ***Acer*** L. (2013)

Registrar: Mr Peter A. Gregory, 1 Oakley Hall, Cirencester, Gloucestershire GL7 1FZ, UK

Email: pgregory@phonecoop.coop

INTERNATIONAL OAK SOCIETY (IOS)

http://www.internationaloaksociety.org

ICRA: ***Quercus*** L. (1998)

Registrars:
1. The Americas: Mr Ryan Russell, 4917 County Road 343, Fulton, Missouri 65251, USA
2. Rest of the world: Mr Eike Jablonski, c/o Lycée Technique Agricole, Dept Horticole, BP 76, L-9001 Ettelbruck, Luxembourg

Email:
1. russelry76@yahoo.com
2. eike.jablonski@education.lu

Registration page:
http://www.internationaloaksociety.org/content/cultivar-registration

INTERNATIONAL POPLAR COMMISSION, FAO

http://www.fao.org/forestry/ipc/69637/en

ICRA: ***Populus*** L. (1955), ***Salix*** L. (2013)

Registrar: Prof. Julia Kuzovkina, University of Connecticut, 1376 Storrs Road Unit 4067, Storrs-Mansfield, Connecticut 06269, USA

Fax: (+1) 860 486 0682
Email: jkuzovkina@uconn.edu

INTERNATIONAL WATERLILY AND WATER GARDENING SOCIETY (IWGS) – NELUMBO

http://www.iwgs.org

ICRA: ***Nelumbo*** Adans. (1988)

Registrar: Prof. Daike Tian, Shanghai Chenshan Plant Science Research Center, Chinese Academy of Sciences, 3888 Chenhua Lu, Songjiang Qu, Shanghai 201602, People's Republic of China

Fax: (+86) 21 57762652
Email: dktian@sibs.ac.cn
Registration Page: http://iwgs.org/nymphaea-and-nelumbo-registration

INTERNATIONAL WATERLILY AND WATER GARDENING SOCIETY (IWGS) – NYMPHAEACEAE

http://www.iwgs.org

ICRA: ***Nymphaeaceae*** Salisb. (1988)

Registrar: Tamara Kilbane, Aquatics, Denver Botanic Gardens, 909 York St, Denver, CO 80206, USA

Fax: (+1) 720 865 3679
Email: Tamara.Kilbane@botanicgardens.org
Registration page:
http://iwgs.org/nymphaea-and-nelumbo-registration

LAKELAND HORTICULTURAL SOCIETY

http://www.holehirdgardens.org.uk

ICRA: ***Astilbe*** Buch.-Ham. ex D. Don (1998)

Registrar: Mr John Ashley, Lakeland Horticultural Society, Holehird, Patterdale Road, Windermere, Cumbria LA23 1NP, UK

Email: secretary@holehirdgardens.org.uk

MAGNOLIA SOCIETY INTERNATIONAL

http://www.magnoliasociety.org

ICRA: ***Magnoliaceae*** Juss. (?1962). A full listing of the genera for which this ICRA registers cultivars may be found at http://www.ishs.org/sci/icralist/icralist.htm

Registrar: Mr Matthew S. Lobdell, 4100 Illinois Route 53, Lisle, IL 60532, USA

Email: mlobdell@mortonarb.org
Registration page via: http://www.magnoliasociety.org

MECONOPSIS GROUP

http://www.meconopsis.org

ICRA: ***Meconopsis*** Vig. (2002)

Registrar: Dr Evelyn Stevens, The Linns, Sheriffmuir, Dunblane, Perthshire FK15 0LP, UK

Fax: (+44) 1786 822295
Email: evelyn@thelinns.org.uk

MEI FLOWER AND WINTERSWEET BRANCH OF CHINA FLOWER ASSOCIATION – CHIMONANTHUS

ICRA: ***Chimonanthus*** Lindl. (2013)

Registrar: Prof. Longqing Chen, College of Horticulture and Forestry Sciences, Huazhong Agricultural University, 1 Shizishan Jie, Hongshan Qu, Wuhan, Hubei 430070, People's Republic of China

Fax: (+86) 27 87282010
Email: chenlq@mail.hzau.edu.cn

MEI FLOWER AND WINTERSWEET BRANCH OF CHINA FLOWER ASSOCIATION – PRUNUS MUME

ICRA: ***Prunus mume*** Siebold & Zucc. (1998) and its hybrids

Registrars:
1. Prof. Qixiang Zhang, Beijing Forestry University, 35 Qinghua Donglu, Haidian Qu, Beijing 100083
2. Prof. Manzhu Bao, College of Horticulture and Forestry Sciences, Huazhong Agricultural University, 1 Shizishan Jie, Hongshan Qu, Wuhan, Hubei 430070; both People's Republic of China

Fax:
1. (+86) 10 62338005
2. (+86) 27 87282010

Email:
1. 13901153775@163.com
2. mzbao@mail.hzau.edu.cn

MORTON ARBORETUM

ICRA: ***Ulmus*** L.

Registrar: Dr Andrew L. Hipp, The Morton Arboretum, 4100 Illinois Route 53, Lisle, Illinois 60532-1293 USA

Email: ulmus.icra@gmail.com

NERINE AND AMARYLLID SOCIETY

http://nerine-registrar.org

ICRA: ***Nerine*** Herb. (2003)

Registrar: Andrew C. Lanoe, Le Haut Chemin, Les Paysans, St Peters, Guernsey, Channel Islands

Email: alanoe@cwgsy.net

NORTH AMERICAN GLADIOLUS COUNCIL

http://www.gladworld.org

ICRA: ***Gladiolus*** L., excluding species and early flowering cultivars (1958)

Registrar: Mr William J. Owen, 675 MacElroy Road, Ballston Lake, NY 12019-2201, USA

Email: smgfowen@nycap.rr.com

PASSIFLORA SOCIETY INTERNATIONAL
http://www.passiflora.org

ICRA: ***Passiflora*** L. (2000)

Registrar: Dr Shawn Mattison, PO Box 350, Elmira, California 95625, USA

Email: passiregistrar@gmail.com
Registration page: http://www.passionflow.co.uk/reg.htm

PELARGONIUM AND GERANIUM SOCIETY (PAGS)
http://www.thepags.org.uk

ICRA: ***Pelargonium*** L'Hér. (2003)

Registrar: Mr Stephen Pollard, 4 Rushmoor Close, Fleet, Hampshire GU52 7LD, UK

Email: stephen.pollard2@ntlworld.com

PLANT & FOOD RESEARCH NEW ZEALAND
http://iplant.pfr.co.nz

ICRA: ***Actinidia*** Lindl. (1993)

Registrar: Dr A. Ross Ferguson, Plant & Food Research New Zealand, Private Bag 92 169, Auckland Mail Centre, Auckland 1142, New Zealand

Fax: (+64) 9 815 4201
Email: ross.ferguson@plantandfood.co.nz

PLUMERIA SOCIETY OF AMERICA, INC.
http://www.theplumeriasociety.org

ICRA: ***Plumeria*** L. (1980)

Registrar: Mr Eulas Stafford, The Plumeria Society of America, Inc., 2301 Primrose, Pasadena, Texas 77502, USA

Email: estafford01@att.net
Registration page:
http://www.theplumeriasociety.org/dyncat.cfm?catid=2000

PROTEACEAE CULTIVAR REGISTRATION AUTHORITY, DEPARTMENT OF AGRICULTURE, FORESTRY AND FISHERIES (SOUTH AFRICA)
http://www.nda.agric.za

ICRA: ***Proteaceae*** Juss., excluding genera endemic to the Australian region. A full listing of the genera for which this ICRA registers cultivars may be found at http://www.ishs.org/sci/icralist/icralist.htm

Registrar: Mrs Joan Sadie, Proteaceae Cultivar Registration Authority, Directorate Plant Production, Private Bag X250, Pretoria 0001, Republic of South Africa

Fax: (+27) 12 319 6353
Email: joans@nda.agric.za
Registration page:
http://www.nda.agric.za/docs/Protea2002/proteaceae_register.htm

ROYAL BOTANICAL GARDENS (CANADA)

http://www.rbg.ca

ICRA: ***Syringa*** L. (1958)

Registrar: Mr Freek Vrugtman, Royal Botanical Gardens, Box 399, Hamilton, Ontario, Canada L8N 3H8

Email: lilacreg@rbg.ca
Registration page: http://www.rbg.ca/files/pdf/exploreandlearn/science/InternationalLilacRegistrar.pdf

ROYAL GENERAL BULBGROWERS' ASSOCIATION (KAVB)

http://www.kavb.nl

ICRA: **Bulbous, cormous and tuberous-rooted ornamental plants**, excluding *Dahlia* Cav., *Lilium* L., *Narcissus* L., *Nerine* Herb. and various Australian genera (1955). A full listing of the genera for which this ICRA registers cultivars may be found at http://www.ishs.org/sci/icralist/icralist.htm

Registrar: Drs Johan van Scheepen, Royal General Bulbgrowers' Association, Postbus 175, NL-2180 AD Hillegom, Netherlands

Fax: (+31) 252 536951
Email: vanscheepen@kavb.nl
Registration page: http://www.kavb.nl/english/registration

ROYAL HORTICULTURAL SOCIETY (RHS) – CLEMATIS

http://www.rhs.org.uk

ICRA: ***Clematis*** L., including *Atragene* L. (1986)

Registrar: Mr Duncan Donald, 16 Midtown of Inverasdale, Poolewe, Achnasheen, Wester Ross, IV22 2LW UK

Email: clematis@rhs.org.uk
Registration page: http://www.rhs.org.uk/plants/plantsmanship/plant-registration/clematis-registration

ROYAL HORTICULTURAL SOCIETY (RHS) – CONIFERS

http://www.rhs.org.uk

ICRA: **Conifers**, including *Ginkgo* L. (1964). A full listing of the genera for which this ICRA registers cultivars may be found at http://www.ishs.org/sci/icralist/icralist.htm

Registrar: RHS International Conifer Registrar, c/o Conifer Registration, Science Dept, RHS Garden Wisley, Woking, Surrey GU23 6QB, UK

Fax: (+44) 1483 211750
Email: conifer@rhs.org.uk
Registration page: http://www.rhs.org.uk/plants/plantsmanship/plant-registration/Conifer-cultivar-registration

ROYAL HORTICULTURAL SOCIETY (RHS) – DAHLIA

http://www.rhs.org.uk

ICRA: ***Dahlia*** Cav. (1966)

Registrar: Ms Sharon McDonald, RHS Garden Wisley, Woking, Surrey GU23 6QB, UK

Fax: (+44) 1483 211750
Email: dahlia@rhs.org.uk
Registration page:
http://www.rhs.org.uk/plants/plantsmanship/plant-registration/Dahlia-cultivar-registration

ROYAL HORTICULTURAL SOCIETY (RHS) – DELPHINIUM

http://www.rhs.org.uk

ICRA: ***Delphinium*** L., perennials only (1955)

Registrar: Mrs Melanie Underwood, RHS Garden Wisley, Woking, Surrey GU23 6QB, UK

Fax: (+44) 1483 211750
Email: delphinium@rhs.org.uk
Registration page:
http://www.rhs.org.uk/plants/plantsmanship/plant-registration/Delphinium-cultivar-registration

ROYAL HORTICULTURAL SOCIETY (RHS) – DIANTHUS

http://www.rhs.org.uk

ICRA: ***Dianthus*** L. (1958)

Registrar: Dr Alan C. Leslie, 109 York Street, Cambridge, CB1 2PZ, UK

Email: alanleslie@rhs.org.uk
Registration page:
http://www.rhs.org.uk/plants/plantsmanship/plant-registration/Dianthus-cultivar-registration

ROYAL HORTICULTURAL SOCIETY (RHS) – LILIUM

http://www.rhs.org.uk

ICRA: ***Lilium*** L. (1958)

Registrar: Mr Duncan Donald, 16 Midtown of Inverasdale, Poolewe, Achnasheen, Wester Ross, IV22 2LW, UK

Fax: (+44) 1483 211750
Email: lily@rhs.org.uk
Registration page:
http://www.rhs.org.uk/plants/plantsmanship/plant-registration/Lily-cultivar-registration

ROYAL HORTICULTURAL SOCIETY (RHS) – NARCISSUS
http://www.rhs.org.uk

ICRA: ***Narcissus*** L., including *Corbularia* Salisb. ex Herb. (1955)

Registrar: Mrs Melanie Underwood, RHS Garden Wisley, Woking, Surrey GU23 6QB, UK

Fax: (+44) 1483 211750
Email: daffodil@rhs.org.uk
Registration page: http://www.rhs.org.uk/plants/plantsmanship/plant-registration/Daffodil-cultivar-registration

ROYAL HORTICULTURAL SOCIETY (RHS) – ORCHIDS
http://www.rhs.org.uk

ICRA: ***Orchidaceae*** Adans. (1972). NOTE: Registration is only for orchid greges (grexes) at present, the one exception being *Pleione* D. Don., for which cultivar registration is now open on a trial basis. For further information, contact the Registrar.

Registrar: Mr Julian M. H. Shaw, 83 Victoria Road, Selston, Nottinghamshire, NG16 6AR, UK

Email: orcreg@rhs.org.uk
Registration page: http://www.rhs.org.uk/plants/plantsmanship/plant-registration/Orchid-hybrid-registration

ROYAL HORTICULTURAL SOCIETY (RHS) – RHODODENDRON
http://www.rhs.org.uk

ICRA: ***Rhododendron*** L., including *Azalea* L. (1958)

Registrar: Dr Alan C. Leslie, 109 York Street, Cambridge, CB1 2PZ, UK

Fax: (+44) 1483 211750
Email: alanleslie@rhs.org.uk
Registration page: http://www.rhs.org.uk/plants/plantsmanship/plant-registration/Rhododendron-cultivar-registration

ROYAL NEW ZEALAND INSTITUTE OF HORTICULTURE, INC.
http://www.rnzih.org.nz

ICRA: ***Coprosma*** J. R. Forst. & G. Forst. (1970); ***Veronica*** L. sect. ***Hebe*** (Comm. ex Juss.) Benth. (1958); ***Leptospermum*** J. R. Forst. & G. Forst. (1958); ***Phormium*** J. R. Forst. & G. Forst. (?1970); ***Pittosporum*** Banks ex Sol. (?1974)

Registrar: Murray Dawson, Landcare Research, PO Box 69040, Lincoln 7640, Canterbury, New Zealand

Fax: (+64) 3 325 2418
Email: dawsonm@rnzih.org.nz
Registration page: http://www.hebesoc.org

SAXIFRAGE SOCIETY
http://www.saxifraga.org

ICRA: ***Saxifraga*** L. (1994)

Registrar: Mr Adrian Young, Waterperry Gardens, Nr Wheatley, Oxfordshire OX33 1JZ, UK
Email: registrar@saxifraga.org

SINGAPORE BOTANIC GARDENS
http://curcuma.sbg.org.sg

ICRA: ***Curcuma*** L. (2000)

Registrar: Dr Nigel Paul Taylor, Singapore Botanic Gardens, Cluny Road, Singapore 259569
Fax: (+65) 6467 4832
Email: nigel_taylor@nparks.gov.sg

SOUTH CHINA BOTANICAL GARDEN, CHINESE ACADEMY OF SCIENCES

ICRA: ***Hedychium*** J. Koenig (2013)

Registrar: Prof. Nianhe Xia, Room 108, Herbarium, South China Botanical Garden, Chinese Academy of Sciences, 723 Xingke Lu, Tianhe Qu, Guangzhou, Guangdong 510650, People's Republic of China
Email: nhxia@scbg.ac.cn

ST-PIERRE, DR RICHARD

ICRA: ***Amelanchier*** Medik. (2013)

Registrar: Dr Richard St-Pierre, 221 Garrison Crescent, Saskatoon, Saskatchewan, Canada S7N 0X2
Email: prairie.elements@sasktel.net

SWEDISH HOYA SOCIETY

ICRA: ***Hoya*** R. Br. (2014)

Registrar: Nadhanielle S. Juhonewe, c/o Ivarsson, Nasta 813, 705 96 Glanshammar, Sweden
Email: n.juhonewe@gmail.com

UNITED STATES NATIONAL ARBORETUM

http://www.usna.usda.gov

ICRA: ***Cercis*** L. (2013), ***Lagerstroemia*** L. (1970)

Registrar: Mr David Kidwell-Slak, USDA/ARE US Arboretum, 3501 New York Avenue, NE Washington, DC 20002-1958, USA

Fax: (+1) 202 245 4579
Email: david.kidwell-slak@ars.usda.gov

APPENDIX II

DIRECTORY OF STATUTORY PLANT REGISTRATION AUTHORITIES

For the latest details, users are referred to the webpages of the International Union for the Protection of New Varieties of Plants (Union Internationale pour la Protection des Obtentions Végétales; UPOV) at:

http://www.upov.int

AFRICA

African Intellectual Property Organisation
Place de la Préfecture
B.P. 887
Yaoundé
Cameroun

Tel: (+237) 2220 5711
Fax: (+237) 2220 5727
Email: ayijuliette@yahoo.fr, fwere_regine@yahoo.fr
Website: www.eshff.gov.al

ALBANIA

National Seeds and Seedlings Institute
Ministry of Agriculture, Food and Consumer Protection
Rr. Siri Kodra
Tirana

Tel: (+355) 4 230 324
Fax: (355) 4 230 324
Email: petrittopi@yahoo.com, fetahelezi@yahoo.com
Website: www.eshff.gov.al

ARGENTINA

Instituto Nacional de Semillas (INASE)
Ministerio de Agricultura, Ganadería y Pesca
Sr. Raimundo Lavignolle
Presidente
Venezuela 162, piso 3
1095 Cuidad Autónoma de Buenos Aires

Tel: (+54) 11 3220 5432
Fax: (+54) 11 3220 5443
Email: presidencia@inase.gov.ar
Website: http://www.inase.gov.ar

AUSTRALIA

The Registrar
Plant Breeder's Rights
IP Australia
PO Box 200
Woden
A.C.T. 2606

Tel: (+61) 2 6283 2999
Fax: (+61) 2 6283 7999
Email: pbr@ipaustralia.gov.au
Website: http://www.ipaustralia.gov.au/pbr/index.shtml

AUSTRIA

Bundesamt für Ernährungssicherheit
Institut für Saat- und Pflanzgut,
Pflanzenschutzdienst und Bienen
Spargelfeldstrasse 191
A-1220 Wien

Tel: (+43) 0 50555 31121
Fax: (+43) 1 50555 34808
Email: sortenwesen@ages.at
Website: http://www.ages.at

AZERBAIJAN

State Commission on the Test and Protection of
Selection Novelty
Necef Narimanov st., 7A
1006 Baku

Tel/Fax: (+994) 12 462 5420
Email: yguliyev@agroagency.gov.az

BELARUS

State Inspection for testing and protection of plant
varieties of the Republic of Belarus
90, Kazintza str., Minsk 220108

Tel: (+375) 17 277 0421 / 277 7451
Fax: (+375) 17 278 3530
Email: belsort@mail.ru

BELGIUM

Service Public Fédéral Economie, P.M.E. Classes
moyenne & energie
Office de la Propriété Intellectuelle
North Gate III – 6ème étage
16, bd du Roi Albert II
B-1000 Bruxelles

Tel: (+32) 2 277 9555
Fax: (+32) 2 277 5262
Email: francoise.deschutter@
economie.fgov.be
Website: http://economie.fgov.be/opri-
die.htm

BOLIVIA

Instituto Nacional de Innovación Agropecuaria y
Forestal (INIAF)
Avenida 6 de Agosto No. 2170
Edificio Hoy, Mezanine, La Paz

Tel: (+591) 2 2441 153 / 2441 608
Fax: (+591) 2 2113 629
Email: contacto@iniaf.gob.bo
Website:http://www.iniaft.gob.bo

BRAZIL

Serviço Nacional de Proteção de Cultivares
(SNPC)
Secretaria de Desenvolvimento Agropecuário e
Cooperativismo (SDC)
Ministério da Agricultura, Pecuária e
Abastecimento
Esplanada dos Ministérios, Bloco D, Anexo A,
Sala 251
CEP 70043-900, Brasilia, DF

Tel: (+55) 61 3218 2547 / 2549
Fax: (+55) 61 3224 2842
Email: snpc@agricultura.gov.br
Website: http://www.agricultura.gov.br

BULGARIA

State Patent Office of the Republic of Bulgaria
52 B, Dr G.M. Dimitrov Blvd
BG-1040 Sofia

Tel: (+359) 2 873 51 75
Fax: (+359) 2 873 51 78
Email: bpo@bg.net
Website: http://www.bpo.bg

Central Office "Variety Testing"
Executive Agency for Variety Testing
Field Inspection and Seed Control (IASAS)
125 Tzarigradsko shose Blvd
Block 1, 1113 Sofia

Tel: (+359) 2 700 375
Fax: (+359) 2 71 36 35

CANADA

Plant Breeders' Rights Office
59 Camelot Drive
Ottawa
Ontario
K1A 0Y9

Tel: (+1) 613 773 7134
Fax: (+1) 613 773 7261
Email: sandy.marshall@inspection.gc.ca
Website: http://www.inspection.gc.ca/
english/plaveg/pbrpov/pbrpove.shtml

CHILE

Ministerio de Agricultura
Servicio Agrícola y Ganadero (SAG)
Departamento de Semillas
Avda Bulnes N140 piso 2
Casilla 1167-21, Santiago de Chile

Tel: (+56) 2 2345 1560, 2345 1561
Fax: (+56) 2 697 2179
Email: semillas@sag.gob.cl
Website: http://www.sag.cl

CHINA

Plant Variety Protection Office
Ministry of Agriculture
No. 11 Nongzhanguannanli Chaoyang District
Beijing 100125

Tel: (+86) 10 5919 3150
Fax: (+86) 10 2919 3142
Email: cnpvp@agri.gov.cn
Website: http://www.cnpvp.net

Office for the Protection of New Varieties of Plants
State Forestry Administration
18 Hepingli East Streent
Beijing 100714

Tel: (+86) 10 8423 9104
Fax: (+86) 10 8423 8883
Email: pvpoffice@cnpvp.net
Website: http://www.cnpvp.net

COLOMBIA

Instituto Colombiano Agropecuario (ICA)
Dirección Técnica de Semillas
Carrera 41 Nº 17-81 Piso 4º
Zona Industrial de Puente Aranda
Bogotá D.C.

Tel: (+57) 1 332 3700 ext. 1361-1367
Email: ana.diaz@ica.gov.co
Website: http://www.ica.gov.co

COSTA RICA

Oficina Nacional de Semillas
Apartado 10309
1000 San José

Tel: (+506) 2223 5922
Fax: (+506) 2221 7792
Email: info@ofinase.go.cr
Website: http://www.ofinase.go.cr

CROATIA

Institute for Seed and Seedlings
Vinkovacka cesta 63c
31000 Osijek

Tel: (+385) 31 275 206
Fax: (+385) 31 275 193
Email: r.ore@zsr.hr
Website: http://www.zsr.hr/main.htm

CZECH REPUBLIC

Central Institute for Supervising and Testing in Agriculture
National Plant Variety Office
Hroznová 2
656 06 Brno

Tel: (+420) 543 548 221
Fax: (+420) 543 212 440
Email: nou@ukzuz.cz
Website: http://www.ukzuz.cz

DENMARK

The Danish AgriFish Agency
Department of Variety Testing
Teglværksvej 10
Tystofte
DK-4230 Skælskør

Tel: (+45) 5816 0600
Fax: (+45) 5816 0606
Email: afs@naturerhverv.dk
Website: http://www.naturerhverv.dk/varieties

DOMINICAN REPUBLIC

Viceministerio de Planificación Sectorial Agropecuaria
Ministerio de Agricultura
Km. 6½ De la Autopista Duarte
Urbanización Jardines del Norte
Santo Domingo

Tel: (+1 809) 547 3888 Ext. 3001 / 3002
Fax: (+1 829) 544 7932
Email: viceministerio.Planificación@agricultura.gob.do
Website: http://www.agricultura.gob.do

ECUADOR

Instituto Ecuatoriano de la Propiedad Intelectual
Dirección Nacional de Obtenciones Vegetales
Av. República 396 y Diego de Almagro
Edif. Forum 300
Plant Baja Piso 1
Quito

Tel: (+593) 2394 0000
Email: info@iepi.gob.ec
Website: http://www.propiedadintelectual.gob.ed/

ESTONIA

Estonian Agricultural Board
Variety Department
Vabaduse sq 4
71020 Viljandi

Tel: (+372) 435 1240
Fax: (+372) 435 1241
Email: laima.puur@pma.agri.ee
Website: http://www.pma.agri.ee

EUROPEAN COMMUNITY

Community Plant Variety Office
CS 10121
49021 Angers Cedex 2
France

Tel: (+33) 2 41 25 64 00
Fax: (+33) 2 41 25 64 10
Email: cpvo@cpvo.europa.eu
Website: www.cpvo.europa.eu

FINLAND

Finnish Food Safety Authority EVIRA
Plant Variety Office
Tampereentie 51
POBox 111
FIN-32201 LOIMAA

Email: pvr@evira.fi
Website: http://www.evira.fi/portal/

FRANCE

Instance Nationale des Obtentions Végétales (INOV)
25, rue George Morel
F-49071 Beaucouzé

Tel: (+33) 2 41 22 8622
Fax: (+33) 2 41 22 8601
Email: inov@geves.fr.
Website: http://geves.fr

GEORGIA

National Intellectual Property Center of Georgia Sakpatenti
31, Nino Ramishvili Str.
0179, Tbilisi

Tel: (+995) 32 225 2533
Fax: (+995) 32 298 8426
Email: info@sakpatenti.org.ge
Website: http://www.sakpatenti.org.ge

GERMANY

Bundessortenamt
Postfach 61 04 40
D-30604 Hannover

Tel: (+49) 511 9566 50
Fax: (+49) 511 9566 9600
Email: bsa@bundessortenamt.de
Website: http://www.bundessortenamt.de

HUNGARY

Szellemi Tulajdon Nemzeti Hivatala
Garibaldi-u.2 - B.P. 552
H-1374 Budapest

Tel: (+36) 1 312 44 00
Fax: (+36) 1 474 5534
Email: sztnh@hip.gov.hu
Website: http://www.sztnh.gov.hu

ICELAND

Agricultural Research Institute
Ministry of Agriculture
Solvholsgata 7, 4th floor
IS-150 Reykjavik

Tel: (+354) 545 9750
Fax: (+354) 552 1160
Email: thorsteinn.tomasson@lan.stjr.is

IRELAND

Controller of Plant Breeders' Rights
Department of Agriculture, Food and the Marine
Backweston Crops Centre
Leixlip
Co. Kildare

Tel: (+353) 1 630 2909/2902
Fax: (+353) 1 628 0634
Email: pvr@agriculture.gov.ie
Website: http://www.agriculture.gov.ie

ISRAEL

The Plant Breeders' Rights Council
Ministry of Agriculture and Development
PO Box 30
Bet-Dagan 50250

Tel: (+972) 3 948 5450
Fax: (+972) 3 948 5839
Email: pbr@moag.gov.il, ilpbr_tu@int.gov.il
Website: http://www.moag.gov.il

ITALY

Directorate General for the fight against counterfeiting – IPTO
Ministry of Economic Development
19, Via Molise
00187 Roma

Tel: (+39) 6 4705 5616
Fax: (+39) 6 4705 5635
Email: dglcuibm.segreteria@mise.gov.it
Website: http://www.uibm.gov.it, http://www.mise.gov.it

JAPAN

New Business and Intellectual Property Division
Food Industry Affairs Bureau
Ministry of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries
1-2-1 Kasumigaseki - Chiyoda-ku
Tokyo 100

Tel: (+81) 3 67 38 64 44
Fax: (+81) 3 35 02 53 01
Email: jpvo@nm.maff.go.jp
Website: http://www.hinsyu.maff.go.jp/enish/index.htm

JORDAN

The Registrar
New Plant Variety Protection Office
Ministry of Agriculture
Q. Rania Alabdalah street
Amman

Tel: (+962) 6 568 6151
Fax: (+962) 6 565 1786
Email: pvp@moa.gov.jo

KENYA

The Managing Director
Kenya Plant Health Inspectorate Service (KEPHIS)
Headquarters, Oloolua Ridge, Karen Waiyaki Way
PO Box 49592-00100, Nairobi

Tel: (+254) 20 359 7201/7203
Cell: (+254) 20 723 786 779 or 733 874 141
Email: director@kephis.org
Website: http://www.kephis.org

KYRGYZSTAN

State Service of Intellectual Property
Moskovskaya St. 62
720021 Bishkek
House 10/1, Microregion 11
720049 Bishkek

Tel: (+996) 3312 680819
Fax: (+996) 3312 681703
Email: info@patent.kg
Website: http://www.patent.kg

LATVIA

Seed Control Department
State Plant Protection Service
Ministry of Agriculture
Lielvardes 36/38, LV-1006 Riga

Tel: (+371) 673 655687
Fax: (+371) 673 65571
Email: sofija.kalinina@vaad.gov.lv
Website: http://www.vaad.gov.lv

LITHUANIA

Head of Plant Variety Division State Plant Service under the Ministry of Agriculture of the Republic of Lithuania
LT-08200 Ozo st. 4A Vilnius

Tel: (+370) 5 234 3647
Fax: (+370) 5 273 0233
Email: sigita.juciuviene@vatzum.lt
Website: http://www.vatzum.lt

MEXICO

Servicio Nacional de Inspección y Certificación de Semillas (SNICS)
Secretaría de Agricultura, Ganadería y Desarrollo Rural, Pesca y Alimentación
Av. Presidente Juárez No. 13, Col. El Cortijo
54000 Tlalnepantla

Tel: (+52) 55 3622 0667 al 70
Fax: (+52) 55 3622 0670
Website: http://snics.sagarpa.gob.mx/

MOROCCO

Chef de la Division du contrôle des semences et Plants
Office National de Sécurité Sanitaire des Produits Alimentaires (ONSSA)
Ministère de l'Agriculture, de la Pêches Maritimes
Rue Hafiane Cherkaoui
B.P. 1308, Rabat Instituts

Tel: (+212) 5 37 77 10 85
Mobile: (+212) 6 73 99 78 09
Fax: (+212) 37 77 98 52
Email: amar.tahiri@gmail.com

NETHERLANDS

Postal address:
Raad voor Plantenrassen
Postbus 27
NL-6710 BA Ede

Tel: (+31) 317 46 54 40
Fax: (+31) 317 41 17 21
Email: plantenrassen@naktuinbouw.nl
Website: http://www.naktuinbouw.nl

NEW ZEALAND

The Commissioner
Intellectual Property Office of New Zealand
Plant Variety Rights
Ministry of Business, Innovation & Employment
PO Box 9241, Marion Square
Wellington 6141

Tel: (+64) 4 978 3624
Fax: (+64) 4 978 3691
Email: info@pvr.govt.nz
Website: http://www.iponz.govt.nz/cms/pvr

NICARAGUA

Registro de la Propiedad Intelectual
Ministerio de Fomento, Industria y Comercio (MIFIC)
Apartado postal 8
Managua

Tel: (+505) 267 3061, 237 2417, 267 2417 ext. 1279, 1221
Fax: (+505) 267 5393
Email: gzelaya@mific.gob.ni, rpi-nic@ibw.com.ni
Website:http://www.tramitesnicaragua.org

NORWAY

Plantesortsnemnda
c/o Mattilsynet
Felles Postmottak
Postboks 383
N-2381 Brummunddal

Tel: (+47) 64 94 44 00
Fax: (+47) 64 94 44 10
Website: www.plantesortsnemnda.no

PANAMA

Dirección General del Registro de la Propiedad Industrial (DIGERPI)
Ministerio de Comercio e Industrias
Apartado 9658 – Zona 4
Panamá 4

Tel: (+507) 227 39 87 / 227 25 35
Fax: (+507) 227 21 39 / 275 604
Email: digerpi@sinfo.net
Website: www.digerpi.gob.pa

PARAGUAY

Servicio Nacional de Calidad y Sanidad Vegetal y de Semillas (SENAVE)
Dirección de Semillas
Gaspar Rodriguez de Francia No. 685
Ruta Mariscal Estigarribia
San Lorenzo

Tel: (+595) 21 584645
Fax: (+595) 21 564845
Email: senave@senave.gov.py

PERU

Dirección de Invenciones y Nuevas Tecnologías
Instituto Nacional de Defensa de la Competencia y de la Protección de la Propiedad Intelectual (INDECOPI)
Calle De La Prosa 104
San Borja
Lima 41

Tel: (+51) 224 7800
Fax: (+51) 224 7800
Website: http://www.indecopi.gob.pe

POLAND

Research Center for Cultivar Testing (COBORU)
63-022 Slupia Wielka

Tel: (+48) 61 285 23 41
Fax: (+48) 61 285 35 58
Email: sekretariat@coboru.pl
Website: http://www.coboru.pl

PORTUGAL

Direção Geral de Alimentação e Veterinária (DGAV)
Campo Grande No. 50
P-1700-093 Lisboa

Tel: (+351) 213 239 655
Fax: (+351) 213 463 518
Email: secdssv@dgav.pt
Website: http://www.dgav.pt

REPUBLIC OF KOREA

The Director General
Korea Seed & Variety Service
Ministry of Agriculture, Food and Rural Affairs (MAFRA)
184 Anyang-ro, Manan-gu
Anyang, Gyeonggi-do 430-833

Tel: (+82) 31 467 0190
Fax: (+82) 31 467 0160
Email: seedin@korea.kr
Website: http://www.seed.go.kr

REPUBLIC OF MOLDOVA

State Commission for Crops Variety Testing and Registration
Ministry of Agriculture
Bul. Stefan cel Mare 162
C.P. 1873
2004 Chisinau

Tel: (+373) 22 462 22, 203 00
Fax: (+373) 22 469 21, 115 37
Email: info@cstsp.md

State Agency on Intellectual Property (AGEPI)
24/1 Andrei Doga Street
2024 Chisinau

Tel: (+373) 22 44 00 94
Fax: (+373) 22 44 00 94
Email: office@agepi.md
Website: http://www.agepi.md

ROMANIA

State Institute for Variety Testing and Registration (ISTIS)
B-dul Marasti, nr. 61, sect. 1
011464 Bucharest

Tel: (+40) 2 1318 4380
Fax: (+40) 2 1318 4408
Email: office@istis.ro, istis@easynet.ro
Website: http://www.istis.ro

RUSSIAN FEDERATION

State Commission of the Russian Federation for Selection Achievements Test and Protection
Orlikov per., 1/11
107139 Moscow

Tel: (+7 495) 207 49 26
Fax: (+7 495) 411 83 66
Email: gossort@gossort.com
Website: http://www.gossort.com

SERBIA

Ministry of Agriculture, Forestry and Water Management Plant Protection Directorate Group for Plant Variety Protection and Biosafety
Omladinskih brigada 1

Tel: (+381) 311 70 94 / 11 260 93 52
Fax: (+381) 311 70 94
Email: jovan.vujovic@minpolj.gov.rs
Website: http://www.uzb.minpolj.gov.rs

SINGAPORE

Intellectual Property Office of Singapore (IPOS)
51 Bras Basah Road #04-01
Manulife Centre 189554

Tel: (+65) 6339 8616
Fax: (+65) 6339 20252
Email: Maslina_Malik@ipos.gov.sg
Website: http://www.ipos.gov.sg/topNav/hom/

SLOVAKIA

Ministry of Agriculture
Dobrovicova 12
812 66 Bratislava

Tel: (+421) 2 592 66 290
Fax: (+421) 2 592 66 294
Email: lucia.povodova@land.gov.sk
Website: http://www.mpsr.sk/en

SLOVENIA

Ministry of Agriculture and the Environment (MAE)
Agriculture Directorate
Dunajska cesta 22
1000 Ljubljana

Tel: (+386) 1 478 91 17
Fax: (+386) 1 478 90 35
Email: gp.mko@gov.si
Website: http://www.mko.gov.si

SOUTH AFRICA

The Registrar
Department of Agriculture, Forestry & Fisheries
Directorate: Genetic Resources
Private Bag X 973
Pretoria 0001

Tel: (+27) 12 319 6183, 319 6096
Fax: (+27) 12 319 6385
Email: noluthandon@daff.gov.za

SPAIN

Oficina Española de Variedades Vegetales (OEVV)
Ministerio de Agricultura, Alimentación y Medio Ambiente
C/ Alfonso No. 33, planta 7a
28010 Madrid

Tel: (+34) 91 347 6659
Fax: (+34) 91 347 6703
Email: MPAyOEVV@magrama.es
Website: http://www.magrama.gob.es

SWEDEN

Swedish Board of Agriculture
Crop Production Division
S-551 82 Jönköping

Tel: (+46) 36 15 55 15 / 15 58 85
Fax: (+46) 36 71 05 17
Email: jordbruksverket@sjv.se
Website: http://www.sjv.se

Swedish Board of Agriculture
Seed Division
Box 83, SE-268 22 Svalöv

Email: utsadeskontroll@sjv.se
Website: http://www.sjv.se

SWITZERLAND

Federal Office for Agriculture FOAG
Plant Variety Rights Office
Mattenhofstr. 5
CH-3003 Bern

Tel: (+41) 58 462 2524
Fax: (+41) 58 462 2634
Email: manuela.brand@blw.admin.ch
Website: www.blw.admin.ch

THE FORMER YUGOSLAV REPUBLIC OF MACEDONIA

Ministry of Agriculture, Forestry and Water Economy
Directorate for Seed and Seedling Materials
Aminta Treti 2, 1000 Skopje

Tel: (+389) 2 322 6417
Fax: (+389) 2 323 0429
Website: http://www.mzsv.gov.mk

TRINIDAD AND TOBAGO

Controller
Intellectual Property Office
Ministry of Legal Affairs
72–74 South Quay
Port of Spain

Tel: (+1 868) 625 99 72, 627 95 67
Fax: (+1 868) 624 12 21
Email: info@ipo.gov.tt

TUNISIA

Direction générale de la protection et du contrôle de la qualité des produits agricoles
Service d'homologation et de protection des obtentions végétales
30, rue Alain Savary
1002 Tunis

Tel: (+216) 71 788979 / 800419
Fax: (+216) 71 784419

TURKEY

Variety Registration and Seed Certification Centre
Ministry of Agriculture and Rural Affairs
PO Box: 30
06172 Yenimahalle – Ankara

Tel: (+90) 312 315 4605
Fax: (+90) 312 315 0901
Email: mehmetsahin@ttsm.gov.tr
Website: www.ttsm.gov.tr

General Directorate of Plant Production
Ministry of Agriculture and Livestock
Eskisehir Yolu 9.km
Lodumlu / Ankara

Tel: (+90) 312 287 3360
Fax: (+90) 312 287 3360
Website: www.bugem.gov.tr

UKRAINE

State Services for Plant Variety Rights Protection
15, Henerala Rodimtseva str.
03041 Kyiv

Tel: (+380) 44 257 99 33
Fax: (+380) 44 257 99 34
Email: sops@sops.gov.ua
Website: http://www.sops.gov.ua/index.htm

UNITED KINGDOM

Department for Environment, Food & Rural Affairs (DEFRA)
Varieties and Seeds Policy Team
Eastbrook
Shaftesbury Road
Cambridge CB2 8DR

Tel: (+44) 300 060 0762
Email: andrew.mitchell@defra.gsi.gov.uk
Website: www.fera.defra.gov.uk/plants/plantVarieties/

UNITED STATES OF AMERICA

The Director of the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office (USPTO)
Mail Stop Office of Policy and External Affairs
600 Dulany St Madison West
Alexandria, VA 22313-1450

Tel: (+1) 571 272 9300
Fax: (+1) 571 273 0085
Website: http://www.uspto.gov

UNITED STATES OF AMERICA (CONT.)

The Commissioner
USDA, AMT, S&T, Plant Variety Protection Office
1400 Independence Ave., S.W.
Room 4512 – South Building, Mail Stop 0273
Washington, CD 20250

Tel: (+1) 202 260 8983
Fax: (+1) 202 260 8976
Website: http://www.ams.usda.gov/science/pvpo/pvpindex.htm

URUGUAY

Instituto Nacional de Semillas (INASE)
Cno. Bertolotti s/n y Ruta 8, km 29
Barros Blancos, Canelones

Tel: (+598) 2 2288 7099
Fax: (+598) 2 2288 7077
Email: inase@inase.org.uy
Website:www.inase.org.uy

UZBEKISTAN

State Patent Office
2a, Toitepa St.
700047 Tashkent

Tel: (+998) 71 13200 13
Fax: (+998) 71 13345 56
Email: info@patent.uz
Website: http://www.patent.uz/eng/

VIETNAM

Plant Variety Protection Office of Viet Nam
Ministry of Agriculture and Rural Development (MARD)
No 2 Ngoc Ha Str
Ba Dinh District
Hanoi

Tel: (+84) 4 8435182
Fax: (+84) 4 7342844
Email: phamdongquang@gmail.com
Website: http://pvpo.mard.gov.vn/Default.aspx

APPENDIX III

PLACES MAINTAINING NOMENCLATURAL STANDARDS

Only those places known to be actively collecting and maintaining designated nomenclatural standards are listed here. Citation of herbarium acronyms is in accordance with *Index Herbariorum* which may be consulted online at http://sciweb.nybg.org/science2/IndexHerbariorum.asp. Contact details are as in that work unless a particular worker at that institution dealing with cultivated plant taxonomy has been identified.

Readers are invited to contact the Editors (email: icncp@rhs.org.uk) to inform them about other herbaria maintaining standards or to amend details of those currently listed.

AUSTRALIA

(**CANB**) Australian National Herbarium

Centre for Australian National Biodiversity Research
GPO Box 1600
Canberra A.C.T. 2601

Contact: Brendan Lepschi
Fax: (+61) 2 6246 5249
Email: brendan.lepschi@csiro.au
Website: http://www.anbg.gov.au/cpbr/herbarium

(**MEL**) National Herbarium of Victoria

Royal Botanic Gardens
Birdwood Avenue
South Yarra
Victoria 3141

Contact: Roger D. Spencer
Fax: (+61) 3 9252 2350
Email: rspenc@rbgmelb.org.au
Website: http://www.rbg.vic.gov.au/science/herbarium-and-resources

CANADA

(**HAM**) Royal Botanical Gardens

Royal Botanical Gardens
PO Box 399
Hamilton
Ontario
L8N 3H8

Contact: Nadia Cavallin
Tel: (+1) 905 527 1158
Fax: (+1) 905 577 0375
Email: ncavallin@rbg.ca
Website: http://www.rbg.ca/herbarium/

CHINA

(BJFC) Beijing Forestry University

Museum, Beijing Forestry University
35 Qinghua Donglu
Haidian Qu
Beijing 100083

Contact: Zhixiang Zhang
Email: zxzhang@bjfu.edu.cn
Website: http://bjfc.bjfu.edu.cn/zy/

(**CSH**) Chenshan Botanical Garden, Shanghai

Herbarium, Chenshan Botanical Garden, Shanghai
3888 Chenhua Lu, Songjiang Qu,
Shanghai 201602

Contact: Binjie Ge
Email: gebinjie123@163.com

(IBSC) South China Botanical Garden

Herbarium, South China Botanical Garden
Chinese Academy of Sciences
723 Xingke Lu, Tianhe Qu
Guangzhou, Guangdong 510650

Contact: Dianxiang Zhang
Email: dx-zhang@scbg.ac.cn

(**NF**) Nanjing Forestry University

Dendrological Herbarium
College of Biology and the Environment
Nanjing Forestry University
159 Longpan Lu
Nanjing, Jiangsu 210037

Contact: Xian-Rong Wang
Email: wangxianrong66@njfu.edu.cn

(PE) Institute of Botany, Chinese Academy of Sciences

Herbarium
20 Nanxincun
Xiangshan
Haidian Qu
Beijing 100093

Contact: Zhirong Yang
Tel: (+86) 62836094
Fax: (+86) 62590843
Email: zry@ibcas.ac.cn
Website: http://pe.ibcas.ac.cn/en/

(SIFS) Sichuan Agriculture University

Dendrological Herbarium
Dujiangyan Campus
Sichuan Agriculture University
288 Jianshe Lu,
Dujiangyan, Sichuan 611830

Contact: Lin Yang
Email: 564177975@qq.com

(SWFC) Southwest Forestry University

Herbarium, Southwest Forestry University
Bailongsi, Panlong Qu,
Kunming, Yunnan 650224

Contact: Maosheng Sun
Email: 1513762048@qq.com

IRAN

(**TARI**) Research Institute of Forests and Rangelands

Herbarium
Botanical Department
P.O. Box 13185-116
Tehran

Contact: Mostafa Assadi
Tel: (98) 21 602 6571
Email: assadi1950@yahoo.com

NETHERLANDS

(**L**) Nationaal Herbarium Nederland, Leiden

Leiden University Branch
Naturalis Biodiversity Center
Darwinweg 2
2333 CR Leiden

Contact: Gerard Thijsse
Fax: (+31) 71 527 3511
Email: thijsse@nhn.leidenuniv.nl
Website: http://www.nhn.leidenuniv.nl/

NEW ZEALAND

(**CHR**) Allan Herbarium

Landcare Research New Zealand Ltd.,
PO Box 40
Lincoln 7640
Lincoln

Contact: Ilse Breitwieser
Tel: (+64) 3 321 9621
Fax: (+64) 3 321 9998
Email: breitwieseri@landcareresearch.co.nz
Website: http://www.landcareresearch.co.nz/resources/collections/allan-herbarium

SOUTH AFRICA

(**NH**) KwaZulu-Natal Herbarium

Box 52099
Berea Rd
Durban 4007

Contact: Dr Y Singh
Tel: (+27)32 202 4095
Email: y.singh@sanbi.org.za
Website: http://www.sanbi.org

UNITED KINGDOM

(**E**) Royal Botanic Garden, Edinburgh

Herbarium, Royal Botanic Garden
Edinburgh
EH3 5LR

Contact: David Harris
Fax: (+44) 131 248 2901
Email: herbarium@rbge.org.uk
Website: http://www.rbge.org.uk/science/herbarium

(**HILL**) Harold Hillier Herbarium

Sir Harold Hillier Gardens
Jermyns Lane,
Ampfield, Romsey
Hampshire SO51 0QA

Contact: David Jewell
Fax: (+44) 1794 368027
Email: david.jewell@hants.gov.uk
Website: http://www.hillier.hants.gov.uk

(**RNG**) University of Reading

Herbarium, University of Reading
Plant Sciences Laboratories
Reading
Berkshire RG6 6AS

Contact: Alastair Culham
Fax: (+44) 118 975 3676
Email: a.culham@reading.ac.uk
Website: http://www.herbarium.reading.ac.uk

(**WSY**) Royal Horticultural Society

RHS Garden Wisley
Woking
Surrey GU23 6QB

Contact: Yvette Harvey
Fax: (+44) 1483 211750
Email: YvetteHarvey@rhs.org.uk
Website: http://www.rhs.org.uk/Science/Conservation-biodiversity/Conserving-garden-plants/RHS-Herbarium

UNITED STATES OF AMERICA

(**A**) Arnold Arboretum

Herbarium of Cultivated Plants of the Arnold Arboretum
Harvard University
125 Arborway
Jamaica Plain
Massachusetts 02130

Email: researchrequests@arnarb.harvard.edu
Website: http://www.arboretum.harvard.edu

(**BISH**) Bishop Museum

Herbarium Pacificum
Bishop Museum
Department of Natural Sciences
1525 Bernice Street
Honolulu
Hawai'i 96817-2704

Contact: Napua Harbottle
Fax: (+1) 808 847 8252
Email: napuah@bishopmuseum.org
Website: http://www.bishopmuseum.org/research/natsci/botany/botany.html

(**BKL**) Brooklyn Botanic Garden

Herbarium, Brooklyn Botanic Garden
1000 Washington Avenue
Brooklyn
New York 11225-1099

Contact: Tony Morosco
Fax: (+1) 718 941 47774
Email: tonymorosco@bbg.org
Website: http://www.bbg.org/research/herbarium

(**CONN**) George Safford Torrey Herbarium

University of Connecticut
Box U-43
75 North Eaglefield Road
Storrs
Connecticut 06269-3043

Contact: Robert Capers
Fax: (+1) 860 486 6364
Email: robert.capers@uconn.edu
Website: http://bgbaseserver.eeb.uconn.edu/

(**DOV**) Claude E. Phillips Herbarium

Department of Agriculture and Natural Resources
Delaware State University
Dover
Delaware 19901-2277

Contact: Arthur O. Tucker, Co-Director
Fax: (+1) 302 857 6460
Email: atucker@desu.edu
Website: http://www.desu.edu/

(**LH**) L.H. Bailey Hortorium Herbarium

Department of Plant Biology
Cornell University
412 Mann Library Building
Ithaca
New York 14853-4301

Contact: Kevin Nixon
Tel: (+1) 607 255 1052, 607 255 0443
Fax: (+1) 607 255 5407
Email: herbarium@cornell.edu
Website: http://bhort.bh.cornell.edu/herb.htm

(**MU**) Willard Sherman Turrell Herbarium

Department of Botany
Miami University
79 Upham Hall
Oxford
Ohio 45045

Contact: Michael A. Vincent
Fax: (+1) 513 529 4243
Email: vincenma@muohio.edu
Website: http://herbarium.muohio.edu/herbariummu/

(**NA**) United States National Arboretum

Herbarium
United States National Arboretum, USDA/ARS
3501 New York Avenue, N.E.
Washington, District of Columbia 20002-1958

Contact: Robert D Webster
Fax: (+1) 202 / 245 4579
Email: robert.d.webster@ars.usda.gov
Website: http://www.usna.usda.gov/Research/Herbarium/index.html

APPENDIX IV

LIBRARIES HOLDING SIGNIFICANT COLLECTIONS OF NURSERY CATALOGUES

As a guide to those wishing to find a library where nursery catalogues or printed versions of nursery catalogues on the internet may be deposited, in accordance with Rec. 25C.1, the following list is provided. There is no standardized means of referring to these collections in the way that herbaria are given unique abbreviations.

Readers are invited to contact the Editors (email: icncp@rhs.org.uk) to inform them about other libraries with significant and actively maintained collections of nursery catalogues or to amend details of those currently listed.

For details of further collections in North America please refer to The Council on Botanical and Horticultural Libraries publication Nursery and Seed Catalogs: A directory of collections (Revised edition) (1990), which is available from the New York Botanical Garden.

CANADA

Royal Botanic Gardens Library
680 Plains Road West
Hamilton/Burlington
Ontario
L7T 4H4

Tel: (+1) 905 527 1158
Website: http://www.rbg.ca/science

FRANCE

Bibliothèque Générale
Agrocampus Ouest centre de formation d'Angers
Institut National d'Horticulture et de Paysage
2 rue le Nôtre
49045 Angers Cedex 01

Tel: (+33) 2 41 22 55 63
Fax: (+33) 2 41 73 15 57

Bibliothèque-CDI
Société Nationale d'Horticulture de France
84 rue de Grenelle
75007 Paris

Tel: (+33) 1 44 39 78 71
Fax: (+33) 1 44 39 78 95
Email: bib.cdi@snhf.org

GERMANY

Bücherei des Deutschen Gartenbaues e.V.
c/o TU Berlin, Universitätsbibliothek
Fasanenstr. 88
D 10623 Berlin

Tel: (+49) 30 314 76 149 (Thursday only)
Email: garbue@gmx.de
Website: http://www.gartenbaubuecherei.de

NETHERLANDS

Bibliotheek Wageningen UR
(Special Collections)
Postbus 9100
6700 HA Wageningen

Tel: (+31) 317 482701
Fax: (+31) 317 484761
Email: speccoll.library@wur.nl
Website: http://library.wur.nl/speccol/nursery_catalogues/

KAVB library
PO Box 175
NL 2180 AD Hillegom
Weersesteinstraat 10A
NL 2181 GA Hillegom

Tel: (+31) 252 53 69 50
Fax: (+31) 252 536951
Email: library@kavb.nl
Website: www.kavb.nl

SOUTH AFRICA

Mary Gunn Library
SANBI National Herbarium
Private Bag X101
Pretoria 0001

Tel: (+27) 12 843 5000
Fax: (+27) 12 804 8740
Website: http://www.sanbi.org/information/marygunn.htm

SWEDEN

Alnarp Library
PO Box 51
SE-230 53
Alnarp

Tel.: (+46) 40 415050
Fax.: (+46) 40 415058
Email: alnarpsbiblioteket@bibal.slu.se
Website: http://www.bib.slu.se/bibliotek/alnarp/eplantskolekat.html

UNITED KINGDOM

Lindley Library London
Royal Horticultural Society
80 Vincent Square
London SW1P 2PE

Tel: (+44) 20 7821 3050
Fax: (+44) 20 7821 3022
Email: library.london@rhs.org.uk
Website: http://www.rhs.org.uk/Learning/Library/

UNITED STATES OF AMERICA

Andersen Horticultural Library
University of Minnesota Landscape Arboretum
3675 Arboretum Drive
Chaska, MN 55318

Tel: (+1) 952 443 1405
Fax: (+1) 952 443 2521
Email: kallen@unm.edu
Website: http://www.arboretum.umn.edu/librarycollections.aspx

L.H. Bailey Hortorium
Dept of Plant Biology
412 Mann Library Bldg
Cornell University
Ithaca, NY 14853

Tel: (+1) 607 255 0863 or 255 0455
Fax: (+1) 607 255 5407
Email: herbarium@cornell.edu
Website: http://bhort.bh.cornell.edu/catalogs.htm

Elisabeth C Miller Library
University of Washington Botanic Gardens
3501 NE 41st Street
Seattle, WA 98195

Tel: (+1) 206 543 0415
Fax: (+1) 206 897 1435
Email: hortlib@u.washington.edu
Website: http://www.millerlibrary.org

Henry G. Gilbert Nursery and Seed Trade Catalog Collection
USDA National Agricultural Library
Abraham Lincoln Building
10301 Baltimore Avenue
Beltsville, MD 20705-2351

Tel: (+1) 301 504 5876
Email: speccoll@ars.usda.gov
Website: http://www.nal.usda.gov/speccoll/collectionsguide/nurserycatalogs.shtml

The LuEsther T. Mertz Library
International Plant Science Center
The New York Botanical Garden
200th Street and Kazimiroff Blvd
Bronx, NY 10458-5126

Tel: (+1) 718 817 8604
Email: libref@nybg.org
Website: http://library.nybg.org

Sterling Morton Library
The Morton Arboretum
4100 Illinois Route 53
Lisle, IL 60532-1293

Tel: (+1) 630 719 2430
Fax: (+1) 630 719 7950
Email: library@mortonarb.org
Website: http://www.mortonarb.org/

University of Delaware Library Special Collections
Morris Library
181 South College Avenue
Newark, DE 19717-5267

Tel: (+1) 302 8312229
Website: http://www.lib.udel.edu/ud/spec

APPENDIX V

SPECIAL DENOMINATION CLASSES

The denomination class is the unit within which the use of a cultivar, Group or grex epithet may not be duplicated except when reuse of an epithet is permitted in accordance with Art. 30 (but see also Art. 21.7) [Art. 6.1].

A denomination class under the provisions of this *Code* is a single genus or hybrid genus unless a special denomination class has been determined by the ISHS Commission for Nomenclature and Cultivar Registration [Art. 6.2].

The ISHS Commission has determined the following special denomination classes:

ANACARDIACEAE

Denomination Class: ***Mangifera indica*** L.

Denomination Class: ***Mangifera*** L., other than *M. indica* L.

CACTACEAE

Denomination Class: **Tribe *Hylocereeae*** (Britton & Rose) Buxb.:*Disocactus* Lindl.; *Epiphyllum* Haw: *Hylocereus* (A. Berger) Britton & Rose; *Pseudorhipsalis* Britton & Rose; *Selenicereus* (A. Berger) Britton & Rose; *Weberocereus* Britton & Rose and their hybrids and their synonyms

COSTACEAE

Denomination Class: ***Chamaecostus*** C. Specht & Stevenson, ***Cheilocostus*** C. Specht, ***Costus*** L. and ***Paracostus*** C. Specht.

CRASSULACEAE

Denomination Class: ***Jovibarba*** Opiz; ***Rosularia*** (DC.) Stapf; ***Sempervivum*** L. and their synonyms

CUPRESSACEAE

Denomination Class: ***Chamaecyparis*** Spach; ***Cupressus*** L.; ***Xanthocyparis*** Farjon & T.H. Nguyên and their hybrids and their synonyms

IRIDACEAE

Denomination Class: ***Gladiolus*** L., large-flowering types

Denomination Class: ***Gladiolus*** L., species and early-flowering types

Denomination Class: ***Iris*** L., bulbous types

Denomination Class: ***Iris*** L., non-bulbous types

MALVACEAE

Denomination Class: ***Hibiscus rosa-sinensis*** L.

Denomination Class: ***Hibiscus*** L., other than *H. rosa-sinensis* L.

ORCHIDACEAE

With the exception of the genus *Pleione* the denomination class for orchid cultivar epithets is the species or grex. In *Pleione* the denomination class for cultivar, Group and grex epithets is the genus.

POACEAE

Denomination Class: Subfamily ***Bambuseae***, all genera, including their hybrids and synonyms.

ROSACEAE

Denomination Class: ***Malus domestica*** (Suckow) Borkh.

Denomination Class: ***Malus*** Mill., excluding *M. domestica* (Suckow) Borkh., but including all rootstock cultivars

Denomination Class: ***Potentilla fruticosa*** L. *sensu lato* and its synonyms

Denomination Class: ***Potentilla*** L., other than *P. fruticosa* L. *sensu lato* and its synonyms.

APPENDIX VI

LIST OF CONSERVED AND REJECTED EPITHETS

Epithets may be permanently conserved by action of the IUBS International Commission for the Nomenclature of Cultivated Plants upon written request from an International Cultivar Registration Authority or any other interested party who makes a submission to the Commission.

Submissions, which must contain written details for each case to be considered, must be made to the Secretary of the Commission: Dr M.H.A. Hoffman, Naktuinbouw, Postbus 40, 2370 AA Roelofarendsveen, Netherlands (email: M.Hoffman@naktuinbouw.nl).

The following list remains permanently open for additions.

ANDROMEDA (*Ericaceae*)

'Compacta Alba' in *Andromeda polifolia* 'Compacta Alba' (2004 in *Heathers* 1: 64)

CALLUNA (*Ericaceae*)

'Alba Jae' in *C. vulgaris* 'Alba Jae' (2004 in *Heathers* 1: 64)

'Corrie's White' in *C. vulgaris* 'Corrie's White' (2004 in *Heathers* 1: 64)

rejected name: *C. vulgaris* 'Corrie's Form'

'Dainty Bess Junior' in *C. vulgaris* 'Dainty Bess Junior' (2004 in *Heathers* 1: 64)

rejected name: *C. vulgaris* 'Bess Junior'

'Hirsuta Albiflora' in *C. vulgaris* 'Hirsuta Albiflora' (2004 in *Heathers* 1: 64)

'Pyramidalis' in *C. vulgaris* 'Pyramidalis' (2004 in *Heathers* 1: 64)

rejected name: *C. vulgaris* 'Alba Pyramidalis'

ERICA (*Ericaceae*)

'Baylay's Variety' in *E. cinerea* 'Baylay's Variety' (2004 in *Heathers* 1: 64)

'King George' in *E. carnea* 'King George' (2004 in *Heathers* 1: 64)

rejected name: *E. carnea* 'King George V'

'Mrs Sam Doncaster' in *E. carnea* 'Mrs Sam Doncaster' (2004 in *Heathers* 1: 64)

rejected name: *E. carnea* 'Mrs Samuel Doncaster'

VIBURNUM (*Caprifoliaceae*)

'Sterile' in *V. macrocephalum* 'Sterile' (1995 in *ICNCP* 6th edition: 69)

syn: *V. macrocephalum* Fortune var. *macrocephalum*
V. macrocephalum var. *sterile* Dippel, Handb. Laubh. 1: 178. 1889 *nom. illegit.*
V. keteleeri macrocephalum Carrière, Rev. Hort., 1863: 271. 1863
V. fortunei hort. ex Nicholson, Ill. Dic. Gard. 4: 155. 1887 *pro syn*.

APPENDIX VII

LATIN NAMES OF PLANTS

The formation and use of botanical names of plants in Latin form are governed by the *International Code of Nomenclature for algae, fungi and plants*, also informally called the Botanical Code or *ICN*. The current edition (2012) was formulated as a result of decisions taken at the 18th International Botanical Congress held in Melbourne in July 2011 and is commonly known as the Melbourne Code.

The *ICN* deals with the naming of taxonomic groups (abbreviated to taxa; singular taxon) and these are arranged in a hierarchical order in consecutively subordinate ranks.

The principal ranks of taxa in descending sequence are: kingdom, division (or phylum), class, order, family, genus and species, of which the species is usually considered the basic rank. Only the final three ranks are in general use for cultivated plants.

FAMILY NAMES

These end with the letters –*aceae* and are based upon the name of a genus.

> Examples: *Apiaceae* based on the genus *Apium*; *Brassicaceae* based on *Brassica*; *Caryophyllaceae* based on *Caryophyllus*; *Ginkgoaceae* based on *Ginkgo*; *Rosaceae* based on *Rosa*; *Winteraceae* based on *Wintera*.

An exception to this rule is made for long-standing family names which are descriptive and are not based on generic names; their use is authorized as alternative names.

> Examples: although *Apiaceae* is based on the genus *Apium*, the long-standing name *Umbelliferae* is permitted as an alternative; likewise *Poaceae*, based on *Poa*, is better known by some as *Gramineae*: and *Asteraceae* is frequently known as *Compositae*.

GENUS NAMES

These are a substantive (noun) in the singular, or a word treated as such, and are written with a capital initial letter.

> Examples: *Galanthus*, *Lilium*, *Pinus*, *Triticum*, *Zea*, × *Crataemespilus*, + *Crataegomespilus*.

The name of a subdivision of a genus, such as subgenus, section, or series, is a combination of a generic name and subdivisional epithet connected by a term denoting its rank. The epithet is written with a capital initial letter and, when written in connection with a specific epithet, is placed in parentheses.

> Examples: *Prunus* (subg. *Cerasus*) *avium*; *Primula* (sect. *Candelabra*) *japonica*; *Iris* (ser. *Laevigatae*) *laevigata*.

SPECIES NAMES

The scientific name of a species is a binomial combination (binomen) in Latin form consisting of a name of the genus followed by a single specific epithet.

> Examples: *Lilium candidum*, where *Lilium* is the generic name and *candidum* is the specific epithet; *Haberlea ferdinandi-coburgii*, where *Haberlea* is the generic name and *ferdinandi-coburgii* is the specific epithet.

Specific epithets, when adjectival in form, agree in gender with the name of their genus. They are written with a lower-case initial letter. Those which are nouns do not agree in gender.

The name of a subdivision of a species, such as subspecies, varietas and forma, is a combination of a species name and a subspecific epithet connected by a term denoting its rank.

> Examples: *Ranunculus acris* subsp. *friesianus*; *Rosa sericea* var. *omeiensis*.

VALID PUBLICATION

To be validly published (established, using the terminology of this *Code*), names of taxa must be formed in accordance with the provisions of the *ICN*, be published with an English or Latin description or diagnosis and have a name-bearing type designated to which the name is permanently attached, whether it is a correct name or a synonym.

HYBRIDS

The Rules for naming hybrids are covered in Appendix I of the *ICN* (Names of hybrids) . Hybridity is indicated by the use of the multiplication sign ×, or by adding the prefix "notho– " (from the Greek *nothos* meaning false and by implication hybrid) to the name of the rank of the taxon, e.g. nothogenus, nothospecies.

Hybrid formulae

A hybrid between named taxa (a nothotaxon) may be indicated by placing the multiplication sign × between the names of the taxa; the whole expression is called a hybrid formula.

> Examples: the hybrid formula for crosses between the grasses *Agrostis* and *Polypogon* is written *Agrostis* × *Polypogon*; the hybrid formula for crosses between *Camellia japonica* and *Camellia saluenensis* is *Camellia japonica* × *Camellia saluenensis*; *Primula allionii* × *pubescens* is the hybrid formula for the cross between *Primula allionii* and *Primula pubescens*, for which there is no nothospecific epithet.

The order of the names in a hybrid formula may be either alphabetical (as in this *Code*) or, when the female parent is known, with the name of the female parent first. The male (♂) and female (♀) signs may be added if desired. The method used throughout a particular publication should be clearly stated.

When a hybrid formula is used with a cultivar epithet, the hybrid formula should be given in parentheses before the epithet.

Example: the camellia cultivar 'Donation' may be designated *Camellia* (*C. japonica* × *C. saluenensis*) 'Donation'.

Names of hybrids

Hybrids between representatives of two or more taxa may receive a name. For nomenclatural purposes, the hybrid nature of a taxon is indicated by placing the multiplication sign × before the name of an intergeneric hybrid or before the epithet in the name of an interspecific hybrid.

Examples: using the above examples, the name of the nothogenus *Agrostis* × *Polypogon* is × *Agropogon*; the name of the nothospecies *Camellia japonica* × *Camellia saluenensis* is *C.* × *williamsii*.

The multiplication sign ×, indicating the hybrid nature of a taxon, should be placed so as to express that it belongs with the name or epithet but is not actually part of it. The exact amount of space, if any, between the multiplication sign and the initial letter of the name or epithet should depend on what best serves readability. If the multiplication sign is not available it should be approximated by a lower-case letter "x" (not italicized).

All members of a nothogenus, whatever the species, have the same nothogeneric name.

Example: all progeny derived from the crossing of any *Cupressus* species with any *Chamaecyparis* species may be designated by the nothogenus × *Cupressocyparis*.

Formation of nothogeneric names

The nothogeneric name for a cross involving two genera is formed by a combination of parts of the names of the two parent genera, using the first or whole of one, the last part or the whole of the other (but not the whole of both) and, optionally, a connecting vowel. Such names are termed condensed formulae.

Examples: × *Alcathaea* for *Alcea* × *Althaea*; × *Amarcrinum* for *Amaryllis* × *Crinum*; × *Epicattleya* for *Epidendrum* × *Cattleya;*

The nothogeneric name for a cross involving four or more genera is formed from the name of a person to which is added the termination *–ara*. Such a name is regarded as a condensed formula but must not exceed eight syllables.

Example*:* × *Beallara* is the condensed formula for *Brassia* × *Cochlioda* × *Miltonia* × *Odontoglossum.*

The nothogeneric name for a cross involving three genera is either a condensed formula in which the names of the three parental genera are combined into a word not exceeding eight syllables, using the whole or first part of one, followed by the whole or any part of another, followed by the whole or last part of the third (but not the whole of all three) and, optionally, one or two connecting vowels, or it is formed from the name of a person to which is added the termination *–ara*.

When a nothogeneric name is formed from the name of a person, it is the tradition that that person should be a collector, grower or student of the group concerned.

In order to be validly published (established), the name of a nothogenus must be published with a statement of the names of the parent genera but no Latin description or diagnosis is necessary. Since the names of nothogenera are condensed formulae, or are treated as such, they do not have name-bearing types.

Formation of nothospecific names

The name of a nothospecies is formed and validly published (established) in the same way as that for a species; the hybrid nature is indicated by the addition of a multiplication sign before the epithet. It is not compulsory to use the multiplication sign, which is merely added before the epithet to indicate extra information about the status of the species.

All progeny from a particular combination of species have the same nothospecific epithet.

> Examples: all progeny derived from crossing *Cupressus macrocarpa* and *Xanthocyparis nootkatensis* may bear the nothospecific name × *Cuprocyparis leylandii*; *Lilium* × *sulphurgale* is the name for hybrids between *Lilium regale* and *L. sulphureum*.

APPENDIX VIII

THE NOMENCLATURAL FILTER

By following the pathways below, one can check that an "epithet" or "name" is (a) established and (b) accepted. Separate filters are provided for cultivar, Group and grex epithets and for the generic names of intergeneric graft-chimaeras.

In these filters, the words "epithet" and "name" appear in double quotation marks until the point of establishment is realized. Only then may one consider whether an epithet or name is accepted or not.

In the event of any inconsistency or discrepancy between a filter and the Articles of this *Code*, the *Code* Articles are to be regarded as definitive.

1. CULTIVAR EPITHETS

1 Has the plant to which the "epithet" is being applied been protected under a grant of Plant Breeders' Rights or an award of a Plant Patent? (Principle 5)

YES: → 34 NO: → 2

2 Is the "epithet" actually a trademark or does it contain a trademark? (Principle 6)

NO: → 3 YES: → STOP TRADEMARKS ARE NEVER TO BE CONSIDERED AS OR AS PART OF CULTIVAR EPITHETS.

3 Is the "epithet" another sort of trade designation? (Art. 13)

NO: → 4 YES: → STOP TRADE DESIGNATIONS ARE MARKETING DEVICES USED IN PLACE OF THE ACCEPTED EPITHET AND ARE NOT TO BE USED AS PART OF CULTIVAR NAMES.

4 Has the "epithet" been conserved by the International Commission for the Nomenclature of Cultivated Plants? (Art. 19)

NO: → 5 YES: → 37

5 Has the "epithet" been rejected by the International Commission for the Nomenclature of Cultivated Plants? (Art. 30.3, 31.8)

NO: → 6 YES: → STOP A REJECTED EPITHET MAY NOT BE USED IN THAT DENOMINATION CLASS: FIND ANOTHER EPITHET.

6 Has the "epithet" been used before for another plant in the denomination class, even as a trade designation, other than for a Group to which the cultivar is assigned? (Art. 30.1)

NO: → 8 YES: → 7

7 Has the "epithet" been designated as acceptable by the International Cultivar Registration Authority? (Art. 29.2, 29.3, 30.2)

YES: → 37 NO: → STOP REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED.

8 Has the "epithet" appeared in a publication that is printed or in similarly duplicated matter? (Art. 25.1, 25.2)

YES: → 9 NO: → STOP REJECT AS NOT PUBLISHED.

9 Was the "epithet" published on or after the starting point for the group concerned? (Art. 18.1)

YES: → 10 NO: → STOP REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED. FIND A LATER PLACE OF PUBLICATION.

10 After 1958, was the publication in which the "epithet" appeared dated at least to the year? (Art. 26)

YES: → 11 NO: → STOP REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED. PUBLICATIONS SINCE 1958 MUST BE DATED – FIND ANOTHER PUBLICATION THAT IS DATED.

11 After 1958, is the "epithet" at least partially in a language other than Latin or is it composed of a Latin word or words current in another language? (Art. 21.11, 21.12)

YES: → 14 NO: → 12

12 Is the "epithet" taken from a Latin epithet at the rank of species or below which is established (validly published) and acceptable in conformity with the *International Code of Nomenclature* for a taxon subsequently re-classified as a cultivar? (Art. 21.5)

YES: → 13 NO: → STOP REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED.

13 Before 1959, is the "epithet" one in Latin form published in conformity with the *International Code of Nomenclature for Cultivated Plants*? (Art. 21.6)

YES: → 14 NO: → STOP REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED.

14 After 1995, are there more than 30 characters in the "epithet"? (Art. 21.13)

NO: → 15 YES: → STOP REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED.

15 After 1995, is the "epithet" very similar to or confusable with another in the same denomination class? (Art. 21.23)

NO: → 16 YES: → STOP REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED.

16 After 1995, does the "epithet" contain the Latin or common name of the genus or nothogenus to which it is assigned? (Art. 21.20)

NO: → 17 YES: → STOP REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED UNLESS SUCH USE IS PERMITTED THROUGH LINGUISTIC CUSTOM (THEN → 17).

17 After 1958, does the "epithet" consist of the Latin name of a genus or nothogenus or other denomination class where such use might lead to confusion? (Art. 21.22)

NO: → 18 YES: → STOP REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED.

18 After 1958, does the "epithet" consist of the common name of a species where such use might lead to confusion? (Art. 21.22)

NO: → 19 YES: → STOP REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED.

19 After 2004, does the "epithet" consist solely of a single letter or solely of Arabic or Roman numerals or of a single letter or numeral in combination with a punctuation mark? (Art. 21.15)

NO: → 20 YES: → STOP REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED.

20 After 1958, do the words "variety" or "form" appear in the "epithet"? (Art. 21.16)

NO: → 21 YES: → STOP REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED.

21 After 1995, do any of the words "cultivar", "grex", "group", "hybrid", "maintenance", "mixture", "selection", "sport", "series" and "strain" or the plural or any abbreviation of these words, or the words "improved" and "transformed" appear in the "epithet", in any language? (Art. 21.17)

NO: → 22 YES: → STOP REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED.

22 After 1995, is the "epithet" likely to exaggerate the merits of the cultivar? (Art. 21.24)

NO: → 23 YES: → STOP REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED.

23 After 1995, does the "epithet" contain inadmissible punctuation marks? (Art. 21.18)

NO: →24 YES: → STOP REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED.

24 Does the "epithet" contain fractions? (Art. 21.19)

NO: → 25 YES: → STOP REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED.

25 Does the “epithet” contain inadmissible symbols? (Art. 21.19)

NO: → 26 YES: → STOP REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED UNLESS TRANSCIPTION OF SYMBOL IS PERMITTED (IF SO, TRANSCRIBE SYMBOL AND → 26).

26 Does the “epithet” consist of a code of more than 10 characters or more than 4 alternating sets of a letter or letter and a number or numbers? (Art. 21.25)

NO: → 27 YES: → STOP REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED.

27 After 1958, is there a description or diagnosis accompanying publication of this “epithet”? (Art. 27.1)

YES: → 29 NO: → 28

28 Is there a reference to a previous publication of a description or diagnosis? (Art. 27.1)

YES: → 29 NO: → STOP REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED.

29 Has the “epithet” definitely been accepted by the author who published it? (Art. 27.6)

YES: → 30 NO: → STOP REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED.

30 Did the cultivar for which the “epithet” was proposed actually exist at the time of publication? (Art. 27.7)

YES: → 31 NO: → STOP REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED.

31 Is the “epithet” against the wishes of the raiser or breeder? (Art. 31.4)

YES: → 32 NO: → STOP REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED.

32 Was another “epithet” proposed by the same author for the same cultivar simultaneously? (Art. 27.8)

NO: → 33 YES: → STOP REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED.

33 **YOU HAVE AN ESTABLISHED EPITHET → 35**

34 Has a statutory plant registration authority denominated a different epithet for the cultivar? (Principle 5)

NO: → 37 YES: → STOP REJECT AS NOT ACCEPTABLE: THE STATUTORY DENOMINATON IS AUTOMATICALLY THE ADOPTED EPITHET.

35 Has the epithet been replaced by a later epithet under the provision of an earlier edition of this *Code*?

NO: → 36 YES: → STOP REJECT AS UNACCEPTABLE AND USE REPLACEMENT EPITHET.

36 Is this the earliest established epithet for the cultivar?

YES: → 37 NO: → STOP REJECT AS UNACCEPTABLE AND USE EARLIEST ESTABLISHED EPITHET.

37 **YOU HAVE THE ACCEPTED EPITHET**

2. GROUP EPITHETS

1 Is the "epithet" actually a trademark or does it contain a trademark? (Principle 6)

NO: → 2 YES: → STOP TRADEMARKS ARE NEVER TO BE CONSIDERED AS OR AS PART OF GROUP EPITHETS.

2 Is the "epithet" another sort of trade designation? (Art. 13)

NO: → 3 YES: → STOP TRADE DESIGNATIONS ARE MARKETING DEVICES USED IN PLACE OF ACCEPTED EPITHETS AND ARE NOT TO BE USED AS PART OF GROUP NAMES.

3 Has the "epithet" been conserved by the International Commission for the Nomenclature of Cultivated Plants? (Art. 19)

NO: → 4 YES: → 37

4 Has the "epithet" been rejected by the International Commission for the Nomenclature of Cultivated Plants? (Art. 30.3, 31.8)

NO: → 5 YES: → STOP A REJECTED EPITHET MAY NOT BE USED IN THAT DEMOMINATION CLASS: FIND ANOTHER EPITHET.

5 Has the "epithet" been used before for another plant in the denomination class, even as a trade designation, other than for a cultivar which is assigned to the Group concerned? (Art. 30.1)

NO: → 7 YES: → 6

6 Has the "epithet" been designated as acceptable by the International Cultivar Registration Authority? (Art. 29.2, 29.3, 30.2)

YES: → 37 NO: → STOP REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED.

7 Has the "epithet" appeared in a publication that is printed or in similarly duplicated matter? (Art. 25.1, 25.2)

YES: → 8 NO: → STOP REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED.

8 Was the "epithet" published on or after the starting point for the denomination class concerned? (Art. 18.1)

YES: → 9 NO: → STOP REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED. FIND A LATER DATE OF PUBLICATION.

9 After 1958, was the publication dated at least to the year? (Art. 26)

YES: → 10 NO: → STOP REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED. PUBLICATIONS SINCE 1958 MUST BE DATED – FIND ANOTHER PUBLICATION THAT IS DATED.

10 Is the "epithet" based upon an established cultivar epithet?

YES: → 34 NO: → 11

11 After 1958, is the "epithet" at least partially in a language other than Latin or is it composed of a Latin word or words current in another language? (Art. 21.11, 21.12)

YES: → 14 NO: → 12

12 Is the "epithet" taken from a Latin epithet at the rank of species or below which is established (validly published) and acceptable in conformity with the *International Code of Nomenclature* for a taxon subsequently re-classified as a Group? (Art. 21.5)

YES: → 13 NO: → STOP REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED.

13 Before 1959, is the "epithet" one in Latin form published in conformity with the *International Code of Nomenclature for Cultivated Plants*? (Art. 21.6)

YES: → 14 NO: → STOP REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED.

14 Is the "epithet" a translation of a Latin form Group epithet? (Art. 32.2)

NO: → 15 YES: → STOP REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED. ESTABLISHED LATIN FORM GROUP EPITHETS MAY NOT BE TRANSLATED.

15 Is the "epithet" the earliest translation of a non-Latin epithet? (Art. 32.2)

YES: → 16 NO: → STOP REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED. NON-LATIN EPITHETS MAY ONLY HAVE ONE TRANSLATION IN ANY LANGUAGE.

16 After 1995, are there more than 30 characters in the "epithet"? (Art. 21.13)

NO: → 17 YES: → STOP REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED.

17 After 1995, is the "epithet" very similar to or confusable with another in the same denomination class? (Art. 21.23)

NO: → 18 YES: → STOP REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED.

18 After 1995, does the "epithet" contain the Latin or common name of the genus or nothogenus to which it is assigned? (Art. 21.20)

NO: → 19 YES: → STOP REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED UNLESS SUCH USE IS PERMITTED THROUGH LINGUISTIC CUSTOM (THEN → 19)

19 After 1958, does the "epithet" consist of the Latin name of a genus or nothogenus or other denomination class where such use might lead to confusion? (Art. 21.22)

NO: → 20 YES: → STOP REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED.

20 After 1958, does the “epithet” consist of the common name of a species where such use might lead to confusion? (Art. 21.22)

NO: → 21 YES: → STOP REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED.

21 After 2004, does the “epithet” consist solely of a single letter or solely of Arabic or Roman numerals or of a single letter or numeral in combination with a punctuation mark? (Art. 21.15)

NO: → 22 YES: → STOP REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED.

22 After 1958, do the words “variety” or “form” appear in the “epithet”? (Art. 21.16)

NO: → 23 YES: → STOP REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED.

23 After 1995, do any of the words “cultivar”, “grex”, “hybrid”, maintenance”, “mixture”, “selection”, “sport”, “series” and “strain” or the plural or any abbreviation of these words, or the words “improved” and “transformed” appear in the “epithet”, in any language? (Art. 21.17)

NO: → 24 YES → STOP REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED.

24 After 1995, is the “epithet” likely to exaggerate the merits of the Group? (Art. 21.24)

NO: → 25 YES: → STOP REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED.

25 After 1995, does the “epithet” contain inadmissible punctuation marks? (Art. 21.18)

NO: → 26 YES: → STOP REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED.

26 Does the “epithet” contain fractions? (Art. 21.19)

NO: → 27 YES: → STOP REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED.

27 Does the “epithet” contain inadmissible symbols? (Art. 21.19)

NO: → 28 YES: → STOP REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED UNLESS TRANSCRIPTION OF SYMBOL IS PERMITTED (IF SO, TRANSCRIBE SYMBOL AND → 28).

28 After 1958, is there a description or diagnosis accompanying publication of the “epithet”? (Art. 27.1)

YES: → 30 NO: → 29

29 Is there a reference to a previous publication or a description or diagnosis? (Art. 27.1)

YES: → 30 NO: → STOP REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED.

30 Has the "epithet" definitely been accepted by the author who published it? (Art. 27.6)

YES: → 31 NO: → STOP REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED.

31 Did the Group for which the "epithet" was proposed actually exist at the time of publication? (Art. 27.7)

YES: → 32 NO: → STOP REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED.

32 Is the "epithet" against the wishes of the raiser or breeder? (Art. 31.4)

NO: → 33 YES: → STOP REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED.

33 Was another "epithet", other than a translation into another language, proposed by the same author for the same Group simultaneously? (Art. 27.8)

NO: → 34 YES: → STOP REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED.

34 **YOU HAVE AN ESTABLISHED GROUP EPITHET → 35**

35 Has the epithet been replaced by a later epithet under the provision of an earlier edition of this Code?

NO: → 36 YES: → STOP REJECT AS NOT UNACCEPTABLE AND USE REPLACEMENT EPITHET.

36 Is this the earliest established epithet for the Group in the language used for the epithet.

YES: → 37 NO: → STOP REJECT AS NOT UNACCEPTABLE AND USE EARLIEST EPITHET IN THAT LANGUAGE.

37 **YOU HAVE AN ACCEPTED GROUP EPITHET**

3. GREX EPITHETS

("epithet", unless otherwise indicated, excludes the word grex)

1 Is the "epithet" actually a trademark or does it contain a trademark? (Principle 6)

NO: → 2 YES: → STOP TRADEMARKS ARE NEVER TO BE CONSIDERED AS OR AS PART OF GREX EPITHETS.

2 Is the "epithet" another sort of trade designation? (Art. 13)

NO: → 3 YES: → STOP TRADE DESIGNATIONS ARE MARKETING DEVICES USED IN PLACE OF ACCEPTED EPITHETS AND ARE NOT TO BE USED AS PART OF GREX NAMES.

3 Has the "epithet" been conserved by the International Commission for the Nomenclature of Cultivated Plants? (Art. 19)

NO: → 4 YES: → 36

4 Has the "epithet" been rejected by the International Commission for the Nomenclature of Cultivated Plants? (Art. 30.3, 31.8)

NO: → 5 YES: → STOP A REJECTED NAME MAY NOT BE USED IN THAT DENOMINATON CLASS: FIND ANOTHER EPITHET.

5 After 2008, has the "epithet" been used as a nothospecific epithet for a hybrid of the same parentage? (Art. 23.5)

NO: → 6 YES: → STOP REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED.

6 Has the "epithet" been used before in the denomination class for any other plant, even as a trade designation? (Art. 30.1)

NO: → 8 YES: → 7

7 Has the "epithet" been designated as acceptable by the International Cultivar Registration Authority? (Art. 29.2, 29.3, 30.2)

YES: → 36 NO: → 8

8 Has the "epithet" appeared in a publication that is printed or similarly duplicated? (Art. 25.1, 25.2)

YES: → 9 NO: → STOP REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED.

9 Was the "epithet" published on or after the starting point for the denomination class concerned? (Art. 18.2)

YES: → 10 NO: → STOP REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED. FIND A LATER DATE OF PUBLICATION.

10 After 1958, was the publication dated at least to the year? (Art. 26)

YES: → 11 NO: → STOP REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED. PUBLICATIONS SINCE 1958 MUST BE DATED. FIND ANOTHER PUBLICATION THAT IS DATED.

11 After 1958, is the "epithet" at least partially in a language other than Latin, or is it composed of a Latin word or words current in another language? (Art. 21.11, 21.12)

YES: → 14 NO: → 12

12 Is the "epithet" taken from a Latin epithet at the rank of species or below which is established (validly published) and acceptable in conformity with the *International Code of Nomenclature* for a taxon subsequently reclassified as a grex? (Art. 21.5)

YES: → 13 NO: → STOP REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED.

13 Before 1959, is the "epithet" one in Latin form published in conformity with the *International Code of Nomenclature for Cultivated Plants*? (Art. 21.6)

YES: → 14 NO: → STOP REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED.

14 After 1995, are there more than 30 characters in the "epithet"? (Art. 21.13)

NO: → 15 YES: → STOP REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED.

15 After 1995, is the "epithet" very similar to or confusable with another in the same denomination class? (Art. 21.23)

NO: → 16 YES: → STOP REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED.

16 After 1995, does the "epithet" contain the Latin or common name of the genus or nothogenus to which it is assigned? (Art. 21.20)

NO: → 17 YES: → STOP REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED UNLESS SUCH USE IS PERMITTED THROUGH LINGUISTIC CUSTOM (THEN → 17)

17 After 1958, does the "epithet" consist of the Latin name of a genus or nothogenus or other denomination class where such use might lead to confusion? (Art. 21.22)

NO: → 18 YES: → STOP REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED.

18 After 1958, does the "epithet" consist of the common name of a species where such use might lead to confusion? (Art. 21.22)

NO: → 19 YES: → STOP REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED.

19 After 2004, does the "epithet" consist solely of a single letter or solely of Arabic or Roman numerals or of a single letter or numeral in combination with a punctuation mark? (Art. 21.15)

NO: → 20 YES: → STOP REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED.

20 After 1958, do the words “variety” or “form” appear in the “epithet”? (Art. 21.16)

NO: → 21 YES: → STOP REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED.

21 After 1995, do any of the words “cultivar”, “group”, “hybrid”, “maintenance”, “mixture”, “selection”, “sport”, “series” and “strain” or the plural or any abbreviation of these words, or the words “improved” or “transformed” appear in the “epithet”, in any language? (Art. 21.17)

NO: → 22 YES: → STOP REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED.

22 After 1995, is the “epithet” likely to exaggerate the merits of the grex? (Art. 21.24)

NO: → 23 YES: → STOP REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED.

23 After 1995, does the “epithet” contain inadmissible punctuation marks? (Art. 21.18)

NO: →24 YES: → STOP REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED.

24 Does the “epithet” contain fractions? (Art. 21.19)

NO: → 25 YES: → STOP REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED.

25 Does the “epithet” contain inadmissible symbols? (Art. 21.19)

NO: → 26 YES: → STOP REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED UNLESS TRANSCIPTION OF SYMBOL IS PERMITTED (IF SO, TRANSCRIBE SYMBOL AND → 26).

26 Is the publication of the “epithet” accompanied by a statement of the accepted names of both parents of the grex? (Art. 27.3)

YES: → 29 NO: → 27

27 Are the names of both parents of the grex omitted from the publication of the name? (Art. 27.3)

NO: → 28 YES: → STOP REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED.

28 If the accepted name of only one parent of the grex is given in the publication of the name, is the other parent at least referred to a genus or nothogenus? (Art. 27.4)

YES: → 29 NO: → STOP REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED.

29 Has the “epithet” definitely been accepted by the author who published it? (Art. 27.6)

YES: → 30 NO: → STOP REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED.

30 Did the grex for which the “epithet” was proposed actually exist at the time of publication? (Art. 27.7)

YES: → 31 NO: → STOP REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED.

31 Is the "epithet" against the wishes of the raiser or breeder? (Art. 31.4)

NO: → 32 YES: → STOP REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED.

32 Was another "epithet" proposed by the same author for the same grex simultaneously? (Art. 27.8)

NO: → 33 YES: → STOP REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED.

33 **YOU HAVE AN ESTABLISHED GREX EPITHET → 34**

34 Has the epithet been replaced by later epithet under provisions of an earlier edition of the *Code*?

NO: → 35 YES: → STOP REJECT AS UNACCEPTABLE AND USE REPLACEMENT EPITHET.

35 Is this the earliest established epithet for the grex?

YES: → 36 NO: → STOP REJECT AS UNACCEPTABLE AND USE REPLACEMENT EPITHET.

36 **YOU HAVE AN ACCEPTED GREX EPITHET**

4. CHIMAERAS

1 For cultivar epithets of a chimaera, → **1** in the filter for cultivar epithets

For generic names of intergeneric graft-chimaeras → **2**

2 Has the "name" appeared in a publication that is printed or similarly duplicated matter? (Art. 25)

YES: → 4 NO: → STOP REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED.

3 Was the "name" published on or after 1 May 1753? (Art. 18.3)

YES: → 4 NO: → STOP REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED.

4 After 1958, was the publication dated at least to the year? (Art. 26)

YES: → 5 NO: → STOP REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED.

5 Is there a statement in the publication of the component genera of the intergeneric graft-chimaera? (Art. 27.3)

YES: → 6 NO: → STOP REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED.

6 Is the "name" formed from legitimate ("accepted") generic names? (Art. 27.3)

YES: → 7 NO: → STOP REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED AND USE A NAME FORMED FROM LEGITIMATE GENERIC NAMES.

7 Is the "name" formed from part of the generic name of one component connected by a vowel to the full name of the other component? (Art. 24.3)

YES: → 8 NO: → STOP REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED.

8 Is the "name" the same as a genus or nothogenus validly published under the ICN? (Art. 24.3)

NO: → 9 YES: → STOP REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED.

9 Is there an earlier established name for the graft-chimaera?

NO: → 10 YES: → STOP REJECT AS NOT ACCEPTABLE AND USE EARLIER ESTABLISHED NAME.

10 **YOU HAVE THE ACCEPTED INTERGENERIC NAME FOR THE GRAFT-CHIMAERA.**

APPENDIX IX

QUICK GUIDE FOR NEW CULTIVAR NAMES

Many of the Rules of this *Code* deal with sorting out problems which have arisen in past nomenclature. The following notes are intended as a quick guide to forming new cultivar epithets and should be read by everyone wishing to name a new cultivar.

DO I HAVE A NEW CULTIVAR?

You have a new cultivar and you wish to name it. First check that you do actually have a cultivar. As a general rule, do not attempt to name a cultivar until you have a number of individuals which are uniform and stable. Now convince yourself that your cultivar is really worth naming; there is no point in going through the process of naming your cultivar if it is not sufficiently distinct or an improvement on others.

There are different sorts of cultivar, ranging from clones which should be genetically identical to tightly controlled seed-raised cultivars such as F_1 hybrids. Article 2 of this *Code* defines some of the different kinds of cultivar.

The only way you can check if it is new is by comparison with existing cultivars. Your new cultivar must be distinguishable from those already in existence.

Once you are satisfied that you do indeed have a new cultivar, decide if you want to give it a cultivar epithet. The epithet is the last part of the full cultivar name and renders the name unique. Cultivar epithets are always written within single quotation marks so that they stand out from the rest of the name.

Remember that cultivar epithets are intended to be available for all to use and that the epithets themselves offer no protection if you wish to obtain intellectual property rights on your new cultivar.

HOW DO I FORM A NEW CULTIVAR NAME?

The full name of a cultivar will always begin with the botanical name of the genus to which the cultivar belongs. Optionally, the species or hybrid epithet may be included as a second element in the cultivar name, but this is not necessary: inclusion merely provides more information about your cultivar.

Nowadays, new cultivar epithets must be, at least in part, in a modern language and they must be unique within the so-called denomination class, which is usually the genus that they belong to. Some groups have special denomination classes and these may be found in Appendix V of this *Code*.

Coining a new and original cultivar epithet is not easy, especially in groups which historically have had hundreds or even thousands of cultivars. Luckily many of these groups have International Cultivar Registration Authorities (ICRAs) who publish Checklists and Registers of epithets which have been used in the past. Check in Appendix I in this *Code* to see if the genus of your cultivar is covered by an ICRA and then consult the ICRA's publications. Each ICRA has a Registrar who will be glad to advise you if your proposed epithet has been used before and whether or not your epithet is acceptable.

There have been many other lists of cultivar epithets produced in the past and a list of some of those is given in Appendix XI of the 1995 *Code*. Most good horticultural and scientific libraries will have copies of these publications for you to check for prior publication.or increasingly you will find useful lists on the world wide web.

Composing an epithet requires a bit of thought. An ideal epithet is both easy to spell and pronounce in the various countries in which the cultivar might be distributed. The rules for composing an epithet allow you to use or make up any word or words you want but the epithet will not be allowed as a cultivar epithet if it is likely to cause confusion with an existing epithet in that denomination class. This *Code* governs the reasons why a proposed epithet might not be allowed; disallowed epithets are to be "rejected".

The following is a checklist of things to do when choosing your cultivar epithet:

1 make sure that your proposed epithet is unique in its denomination class

2 make sure that your epithet cannot be confused either in spelling or pronunciation with another existing one

3 make sure that your epithet could not be interpreted as being likely to exaggerate the merits of the cultivar (i.e. do not use superlatives such as 'Best Ever', 'The Greatest' and 'Tastiest of All')

4 make sure that your epithet has no more than 30 characters, excluding spaces and the single quotation marks

5 avoid using solely Latin words

6 do not use any of the following banned words or their abbreviations or equivalents in any language in your epithet: "hybrid", "cultivar", "grex", "group", "form", "maintenance", "mixture", "selection", "sport", "strain", "series", "variety" (or the plural form of these words in any language) or the words "improved" and "transformed"

7 do not use fractions or symbols

8 do not use single letters or single numerals, or combinations of a single letter or a single numeral with a punctuation mark

9 do not use any punctuation marks except for the apostrophe, the comma, the hyphen, the full stop, the forward slash (/) or the backward slash (\); a maximum of two exclamation marks may be included, but they must not be adjacent

10 make sure that your epithet does not contain the Latin or common name of the genus to which it is assigned

11 make sure that your epithet is not the name of a genus or the common name of a species or other denomination class if this would lead to confusion

WHAT DO I DO WITH MY NEW NAME?

Once you have satisfied yourself that your epithet is in an acceptable form, register it with the appropriate ICRA. This will usually cost you little more than the time spent filling in a form and sending it off but will help ensure that the epithet is internationally recognized forever.

The epithet will have to be published in order to be absolutely fixed. You may either publish it yourself, say in your nursery catalogue if you are a nurseryman, or the ICRA concerned will publish it for you in due course if you register the epithet with them. ICRAs, however, are placed under no obligation to publish your epithet within a short period of time and you should realize that your chosen epithet might be used by someone else for a completely different plant unless you take steps to ensure early publication. If someone else, even if in a different part of the world, publishes your chosen epithet for a different cultivar in the same genus, you will have to think of another for your plant.

Publication of your new epithet must be in printed or similarly duplicated matter which is distributed to the general public or at least to botanical, agricultural, forestry or horticultural institutions with libraries. Electronic publication such as on a website or a CD does not establish a new name. Formal publication of an electronic trade catalogue may be effected by printing and depositing two copies with a designated library.

Publications must be dated. A new epithet appearing in a nursery catalogue will not be treated as having been published if that catalogue is not dated at least to the year.

Do not publish more than one epithet for the same cultivar in the same publication: if you do this, none will be considered as having been published in that publication. Nor should you seek to replace your original epithet in any later publication.

It may be that you are registering or publishing a new cultivar epithet on behalf of someone else or that you are promoting a new epithet for a cultivar raised by someone else. Check that

the originator of the cultivar agrees with the epithet you are promoting and its spelling; if (s)he does not, the epithet may have to be rejected.

When you publish a new cultivar epithet, you must include a description of the cultivar. The longer and more complete the description the better but at least state its obvious characteristics and, if you can, state how it differs from an existing similar cultivar. It is helpful, though not compulsory, to supply an informative illustration of the new cultivar in the publication.

Make a statement such as "new cultivar name" after the new epithet so that others may recognize the fact that you have deliberately named it.

WHAT ELSE SHOULD I DO?

Send a copy of your publication to the ICRA and to the main horticultural libraries in your part of the world. If you are feeling generous, send copies to similar libraries in other parts of the world too.

If you can, provide a herbarium specimen (a nomenclatural standard) of the new cultivar to your nearest herbarium which specializes in maintaining nomenclatural standards. A list is provided in Appendix III. This will help ensure that the identity of your cultivar can be confirmed if a query arises in the future and may help resolve disputes if more than one person thinks they have raised the same cultivar. The designation of a standard and its location must also be published, preferably in the same place as the name is established.

Finally, ensure that the name is used by everyone and do not encourage others to coin trade designations or other selling names for your plant. The most effective way to protect a name is to label your plants clearly and unambiguously. Always maintain "your" cultivar epithet within single quotation marks to ensure that the status of your plant is understood.

APPENDIX X

PLANT DESIGNATIONS NOT GOVERNED BY THE *ICNCP*

(1) TRADE DESIGNATIONS

Principle 6 While the use of trade designations as marketing devices in addition to properly established names of taxa of plants is acknowledged in this Code*, the formation of such designations is not regulated under this* Code.

Art. 2 Note 7 Where a collective name has been given to a plant composed of scions of different cultivars on a single rootstock, this is to be regarded as a trade designation.

Art.13.1 A trade designation is not a name regulated under this Code *but is a device that is used for marketing a cultivar, Group, or grex in place of its accepted or adopted name or names.*

Art.13.2 A trade designation is not to be cited as a synonym.

Art. 13. Note 1 A cultivar name that has become a synonym under the provisions of Art. 11.2 is sometimes used to market a cultivar, in which case it may also be treated as a trade designation.

Art. 13. Note 2 Nationally important established cultivar names that are not the earliest name may be taken up and used as trade designations.

Art. 17.1 Trade designations may not be placed within demarcating quotation marks.

Art. 17.2 If cited, trade designations must always be accompanied by their accepted or adopted names.

Art. 17.3 If cited, trade designations must always be distinguished typographically from cultivar, Group, and grex epithets.

Art. 32. Note 1 Notwithstanding Art.32.1 when for marketing reasons a cultivar or grex epithet has been translated into a different language, the translated epithet is to be regarded as a trade designation. However, this should be avoided when the resulting trade designation replicates an existing epithet in the denomination class concerned.

Other than in the extracts listed above, this *Code* does not formally regulate the formation and use of trade designations. However, bearing in mind that trade designations are widely in use in relation to plant names, the following notes are intended to provide guidance to International

Cultivar Registration Authorities (ICRAs) and others who need to understand how they might be treated:

(a) In distinguishing a trade designation typographically from an accepted name the trade designation may, for example, be placed in capitals, e.g. *Dianthus* FANTASIA is the trade designation for the cultivar with the accepted name *Dianthus* 'Londaison'. The use of any other typographical device to make this distinction should avoid anything that might cause confusion with indications of cultivar, Group or grex status, so for example the use of single or double quotes is not recommended.

(b) When citing a trade designation together with an accepted name, whilst it is preferable to list the accepted name first, the order in which they are quoted may depend on the circumstances; it is recognized that users of a name may be more familiar with the trade designation. Thus *Dianthus* 'Londaison' FANTASIA or *Dianthus* FANTASIA 'Londaison' can both be used. Placing the second element within brackets is another accepted style of presentation e.g. *Dianthus* 'Londaison' (FANTASIA) or *Dianthus* FANTASIA ('Londaison').

(c) ICRAs should seek to record the use of trade designations and to avoid the use of identical or confusingly similar epithets in the names of cultivars, Groups and grexes. Trade designations however should not be registered by ICRAs since they are not formally regarded as names.

(d) In some circumstances more than one trade designation may have been used in association with an individual cultivar, Group or grex name (see Art.13, Example 1). It is recommended that all such trade designations are recorded by the relevant ICRA.

(e) It is recommended that anyone coining new trade designations should report them to the appropriate ICRA, in association with the accepted name for each plant.

(f) When ICRAs encounter translations of cultivar or grex epithets these should be treated as trade designations and recorded as such. However, ICRAs should not seek to provide a translation for all epithets, only to record those known to have been used. Translations of some Group epithets are permitted (see Art.32.2); these should not be treated as trade designations.

(g) In some circumstances it may be necessary to record the use of the same word or words both as a synonym and as a trade designation for the same plant. This may occur when a name has been established prior to the plant being granted statutory rights (e.g. Plant Breeders' Rights) and when a different name has been used for the same plant in the grant of rights. The latter has to become the adopted name of the plant and the earlier established name a synonym. However, if the synonym is then taken up as a marketing device for that plant it should then to be treated as a trade designation. This treatment applies even if the earlier established name has been registered by an ICRA. Another example is given under Art. 13.2.

(h) Some trade designations may consist of or contain registered trademarks. A registered trademark is one that has been formally accepted by a statutory trademark authority and is

usually distinguished by the international symbol ®. The use of this symbol is not compulsory. Registered trademarks are the intellectual property of a person or some corporate body and are therefore not freely available for any person to use; consequently they cannot be considered as or as part of names.

(i) Most trademarks are applicable over a restricted class of goods, so that a trademark registered for use in a class covering machines and machine tools may still be acceptable for use as part of a plant name.

Art. 8. Note 1 Anyone using a trademark in marketing a cultivar should be aware of the risk of the trademark becoming generic unless an accepted or adopted name is also given when marketing the cultivar. The trademark should always be accompanied by an accepted or adopted name

(j) Whilst it is the responsibility of the trademark holder to police their rights, ICRAs should always treat as trade designations what might appear to be names regulated by this *Code*, but which are or include known registered trademarks. ICRAs should not be seen as a definitive source of information about trademark protection and queries about the application of specific trademarks should be referred to appropriate trademark authorities.

An exception to this is the case in which a statutory registration authority (involving for instance a plant patent or Plant Breeders' Rights) has granted a right using a denomination which is or includes a registered trademark which belongs to the applicant. In such cases the denomination used in the grant of rights has to remain as the accepted name of the plant.

(k) In some cases trademarks may be claimed but are not registered with a national statutory trademark authority. These may be seen quoted with the symbol ™. In many countries this sort of mark confers little or no enforceable protection over the use of the mark, but advice needs to be sought in individual countries; in the USA, for example, ™ marks may be associated with some degree of local protection.

(l) It may be necessary on rare occasions for an ICRA to record a plant as only having a trade designation and no accepted name. This will arise when what is used to market the plant is, or contains, a registered trademark and there is no alternative available to be treated as the cultivar name.

(2) SERIES

Recommendation 22B.1 While the Code *does not recognize Series as a category, it is possible to treat Series as Groups where appropriate, and where it does not cause confusion.*

Other than in the extract given above, the *Code* provides no guidance concerning the use of Series and their application. However, they are widely used as marketing devices in the plant trade and a standardization of their use should be encouraged. Similarly a consistent method

of treating the epithets and designations applied to seed mixes would be helpful to those who deal with them. The following notes are provided as guidance:

(a) Series should have an initial capital letter but should not appear in italics, single or double quotes or be distinguished typographically from surrounding text (See *Rec. 22B*, *Ex. 10*).

(b) ICRAs should seek to record the use of Series designations and to avoid the use of identical or confusingly similar epithets in the names of cultivars, Groups and grexes. Series designations should not be registered by ICRAs since they are not regarded as names under the *Code*.

(c) Where a specific cultivar from a Series is offered, the Series name may be included in brackets before or after the cultivar epithet, e.g. *Aquilegia vulgaris* var. *stellata* (Barlow Series) 'Nora Barlow', *Aquilegia vulgaris* var. *stellata* 'Nora Barlow' (Barlow Series).

(d) Cultivar names incorporating the name of the Series in which they are included should be given in full, e.g. *Aquilegia flabellata* (Cameo Series) 'Cameo Blush', not *Aquilegia flabellata* (Cameo Series) 'Blush'.

(e) Where a range of representatives from a Series are being sold in the same packet of seed or an unspecified cultivar belonging to a Series is offered, these may be referred to by using the Series designation after the lowest taxon to which all members of the Series are attributable. In this case the Series designations should not appear in brackets, e.g. *Aquilegia vulgaris* var. *stellata* Barlow Series.

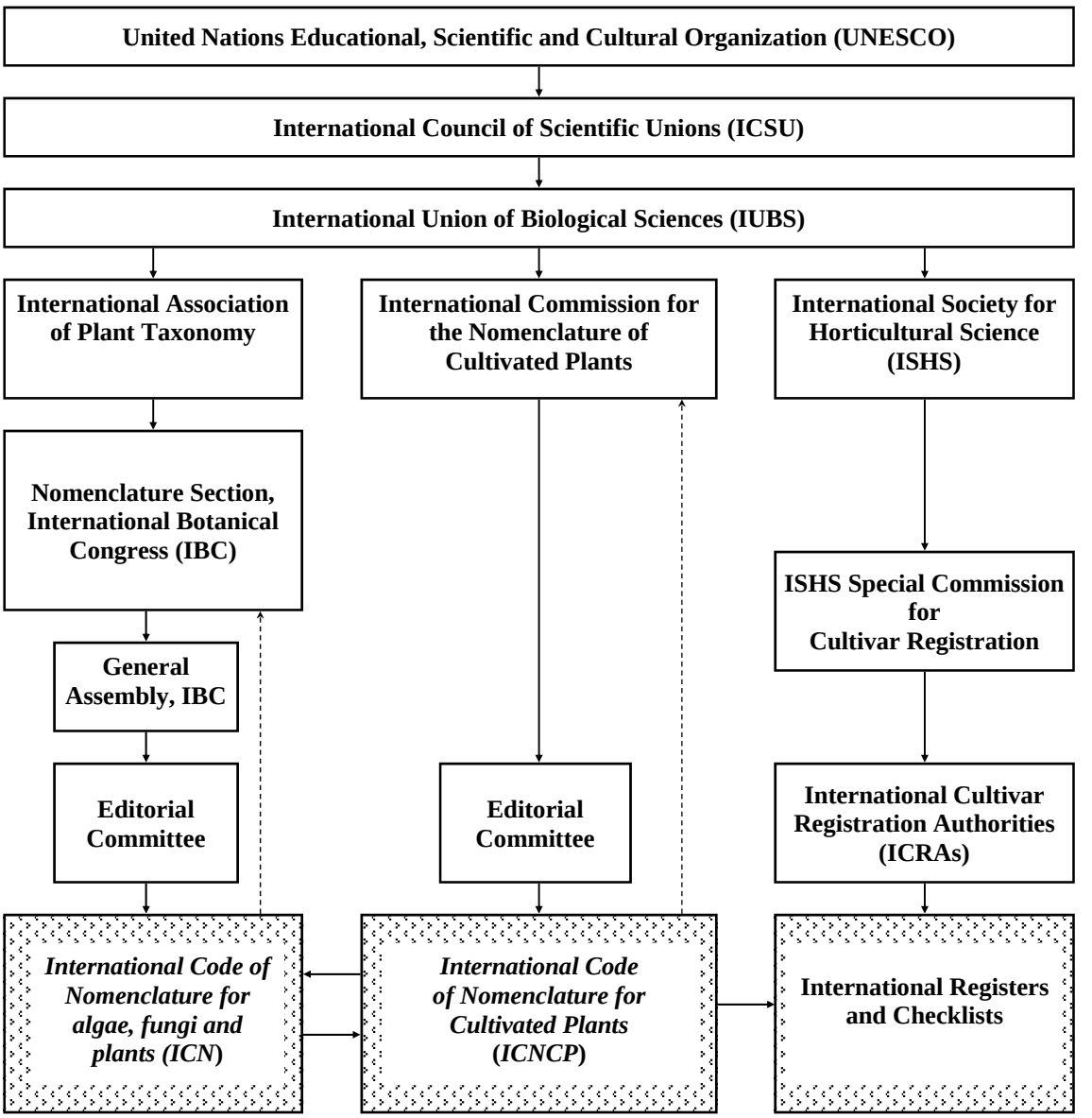
(f) Where an additional selling name has been provided for a mixture of components of a Series this is best treated as a trade designation.

(g) When names represent nothing more than a marketing device to help sell, in one packet of seed, a diverse collection of entities, they are best treated outside a formal taxonomy and styled as trade designations. The use of the word "Mix" in such designations may be treated as an abbreviation for "Mixed" and if desired may be spelt in full, the two words being treated as equivalents.

APPENDIX XI

FLOW CHART OF NOMENCLATURAL BODIES AND PROCESSES

This chart demonstrates the relationships between the various international bodies that govern the international nomenclature of plants, resulting in the provision of a correct nomenclature.



GLOSSARY

This glossary provides succinct meanings of terms used in this *Code*, and also provides reference for other terms which may be used in discussions on the nomenclature of cultivated plants.

For a fuller glossary of terms used in nomenclature generally, the user is referred to: Hawskworth, D.L. *Terms used in Bionomenclature – The naming of organisms (and plant communities)*, Global Biodiversity Information Facility, Copenhagen, 2010 and Turland, N., *The Code Decoded. A user's guide to the International Code of Nomenclature for algae, fungi, and plants*, Regnum Vegetabile 155, Koeltz Scientific Books, 2013.

abbreviation
a shortening of a word or words using selected letters. See also: **acronym**, **blend**, **contraction**, and **initialism**

accent
a mark associated with a letter, which indicates the way in which that letter is to be pronounced. It is also used in some languages to indicate where the stress (or emphasis) falls in a word.

accepted name
the earliest name for a cultivar, Group, grex, or graft-chimaeric genus that must be adopted except in specified circumstances (*ICNCP* Art. 11.1).

acronym
a pronounceable word derived from the initial letters of a phrase or a series of words.

addition sign (+)
in nomenclature, the symbol used to indicate a graft-chimaera.

admissible name
an unpublished name that is in a form that would permit it to be established.

adopted name
a name that has to be used by virtue of it having been registered by a statutory plant registration authority but which does not meet the requirements of *ICNCP* Art. 11.1 (*ICNCP* Art. 11.3).

agamospermy (noun)**; agamospermous** (adjective)
the process by which some plants produce viable seeds without fertilization and whose progeny is, therefore, usually genetically uniform and identical to the parent.

agriculture
the non-domestic cultivation of food, fodder, and industrial crops. See also: **forestry**

allopolyploid
a polyploid with chromosome sets derived from different species.

alternative terms
different words to express the same concept.

apomict
a plant habitually reproducing by means of apomixis.

apomixis
the process by which some plants reproduce by asexual means by producing viable progeny without fertilization and are therefore usually genetically uniform (also sometimes applied to vegetative reproduction).

Article
a specific element of a *Code* which must be followed.

artificial classification
one proposed solely for ease of use and which does not aim to demonstrate true relatedness.

artificial cross – see: **artificial hybrid**

artificial hybrid
the result of intentional crossing of different plants or taxa (see also **hybrid** and **natural hybrid**).

artificial selection
the process of intentional or unintentional modification of a species through human actions that encourage the selection of certain characteristics over others.

asexual propagation
propagation without fertilization, e.g. agamospermy, cuttings, division, meristem culture, and micropropagation.

assignee
one who is appointed by a person to act on their behalf.

authentic specimen
one that has been verified by a raiser or breeder, introducer or author of a name as being representative of the taxon to which the name is assigned.

author
the individual to whom a name or publication is attributed.

author abbreviation
an abbreviation of the name of an author used in an author citation. For names governed by the *ICN* these are standardized (see www.ipni.org/ipni/authorsearchpage.do).

author citation
a statement of the name(s) of the author(s) responsible for a publication or the establishment of a name.

autograph
a text written by hand and not reproduced by machine.

autopolyploid
a polyploid with chromosome sets derived from a single species or individual.

back-cross
the cross of a hybrid with one of its own parents.

basionym
the legitimate, previously published name on which a new combination or name at new rank is based. The basionym provides the final epithet, name, or stem of the new combination or name at new rank (*ICN* Art. 6.10).

bigeneric hybrid
the result of a cross between individuals classified in two genera.

binary combination
the scientific name of a species consisting of two words, the first word being the name of the genus to which that species belongs and the second being the epithet given to that species to distinguish it from others in the same genus (*ICN* Art. 23.1).

binary name – see: **binary combination**

binomen – see: **binary combination**

binomial – see: **binary combination**

blend
a novel word derived from combining parts of other words.

bonsai
the art of dwarfing trees and other plants in pots.

Botanical Code – see: **International Code of Nomenclature for algae, fungi, and plants**

botanical Latin – see: **Latin**

botanical name – see: **scientific name**

brackets
a pair of marks such as round brackets (...) (also often called parentheses), square brackets [...], or curly brackets {...} used for enclosing words or numbers so as to separate them from their context.

breeder
the person developing new or improved groups of plants by selection, hybridization, and similar methods.

budwood
shoots of scion material from which buds are obtained for budding.

category
a division in a system of classification. In this *Code* there are three categories: cultivar, Group and grex, and should not necessarily be hierarchically limited (*ICNCP* Art. 2.1).

character
a trait, property, quality or attribute (morphological, physiological, anatomical, cytological or biochemical) that may be observed or quantified and that may serve to distinguish one taxon from another. A statement of the origin (parentage) of the taxon is not to be regarded as a character.

characteristic
the possession of a distinctive character (noun).

Checklist
a publication listing all names, for a defined taxon or geographical area irrespective of nomenclatural status, that have been published or made known in the literature, together with relevant bibliographic and/or taxonomic data.

chimaera
an individual composed of two or more genetically different tissues in intimate association (*ICNCP* Art. 2.10 & Art. 5). See also: **graft-chimaera**, **mutation-chimaera**

circumscribe
to make a circumscription.

circumscription
a statement of the diagnostic limits of a taxon.

classification
the systematic grouping of items; a system in which items may be grouped.

clone
two or more individuals, originally derived from one plant by asexual propagation, which remain genetically identical (*ICNCP* Art. 2.5).

Code
one of the international codes of nomenclature, generally referring to its most recent edition.

code-name
an epithet that is not readily understandable that is made up of a sequence of connected letters and/or numerals (*ICNCP* Art. 21.25).

co-extension
a situation when all plants attributed to one name may also be attributed to another name, both names being acceptable for use depending upon the circumstance and the application of the name (see *ICNCP* Art. 3.3).

colour mixture
seed from field-grown, open-pollinated lines which may or may not be mixed to a particular formula.

combination
in the *ICN*, the name of a taxon below the rank of genus, consisting of the genus name and species epithet, possibly followed by one or more epithets at infraspecific ranks (*ICN* Art. 6.7).

Commission for Nomenclature and Cultivar Registration – see: **Special Commission for Cultivar Registration**

commercial synonym – see: **trade designation**

common name
one widely or locally used in any language in place of a scientific name.

competing name
one of those taken into consideration in determining the correct or accepted name for a taxon.

condensed formula
the name of a hybrid genus or graft-chimaeric genus constructed from parts of the names of the parent genera involved (*ICN* Art. H.6.2).

congeneric
belonging to the same genus.

connecting vowel
one that joins different word elements.

conserved name
one that, although contrary to the Rules of this *Code*, is declared to be the accepted name, by ruling of a body responsible for such decisions (*ICNCP* Art. 12.1, Appendix VI & *ICN* Art. 14.4).

conspecific
belonging to the same species.

contraction
an abbreviation that shortens a word by removing one or more of its middle letters.

correct name
the legitimate name which must be adopted under *ICN* Art. 6.6 for a taxon at the rank of family and below with a particular circumscription, position and rank.

covariant
a plant whose characters are maintained solely by regular practices of cultivation such as by pruning or training (*ICNCP* Art. 2.23).

cross
to hybridize one plant with another (verb); the product of hybridization (noun).

cultigen – see: **cultivated plant**

cultivar
an assemblage of plants that has been selected for a particular character or combination of characters and that is clearly distinct, uniform, and stable in these characters and that when propagated by appropriate means retains those characters (*ICNCP* Art. 2.3).

cultivar class – see: **denomination class**

cultivar epithet
the defining part of a name that denotes a cultivar, usually following a genus name, a binary combination or the common name equivalent.

cultivariant – see**: topophysic cultivar**

cultivated plant
a deliberately selected plant that may have arisen by intentional or accidental hybridization in cultivation, by selection from existing cultivated stocks, or from variants within wild populations that is maintained as a recognizable entity solely by continued propagation or from genetically modified plants.

Cultivated Plant Code – see: **International Code of Nomenclature for Cultivated Plants**

culton (plural: culta)
a systematic group of cultivated plants which is based upon one or more user criteria; a term equivalent to taxon but based on a classification philosophy different from that used for taxa in general.

cyclophysic cultivar
a clone with the same genotype as the original parent plant but differing in its phenotype, being originally propagated from specific tissue from a phase in the plant's life cycle (*ICNCP* Art. 2.7).

date of a name
the date of establishment of a cultivar, Group, grex, or the generic name of an intergeneric graft-chimaera (*ICNCP* Art. 9.1).

date of publication
the actual time (day, month and year, or month and year, or at least the year), on which printed matter became available to the general public or to botanical libraries (*ICNCP* Art. 25.2 & Art. 26.2).

denomination – see: **variety denomination**

denomination class (cultivar class)
the assemblage of taxa in which cultivar, Group and grex epithets may not be duplicated except in special circumstances (*ICNCP* Art. 6.1). This is not recognized as a formal category under the *ICNCP*.

description
a statement of the characters of a particular taxon; an expanded diagnosis.

descriptor
a word or phrase attached to the name of a taxon which is used to indicate an element such as flower colour.

designation
a term used to specify a particular variety of plant.

determine
to establish the identity of a plant or taxon.

determination
an identification.

diacritical mark
a sign such as an accent or diaeresis connected with a letter, used to indicate correct pronunciation.

diaeresis
a diacritical mark (¨) placed over one of two consecutive vowels to indicate that they are to be pronounced separately when they might otherwise be pronounced as one sound.

diagnosis (plural: diagnoses)
a statement which, in the opinion of its author, distinguishes a taxon from others.

diagnostic characters
the features that permit one to assign a plant to a particular taxon.

distinct
consistently different in one or more characters so as to permit repeated recognition.

double-cross
the repeatable crossing of two F_1 hybrids.

duplicate
of a specimen, part of a single gathering from a single plant or local population made by the same collector(s) at one time.

duplicate standard
a duplicate nomenclatural standard, separately filed.

DUS
the criteria of **D**istinctness, **U**niformity and **S**tability by which a new cultivar is tested for statutory purposes such as for the granting of Plant Breeders' Rights or the addition to a National List.

ending
(grammatical) an inflection; the part of a word added to a Greek or Latin stem when the word is inflected, for instance when a cultivar epithet in Latin form agrees with the gender of a genus (*ICNCP* Arts 21.8, 21.9 & 21.10).

ephemeral
of publications, those not intended for long-term reference, such as newspapers and advertisements, which usually become obsolete soon after they are issued.

epithet
the final word, combination of words or element in a name that denotes an individual taxon. See also: **cultivar epithet**

epitype
in the *ICN*, the specimen or illustration selected to serve as interpretative type when the holotype, lectotype or previously designated neotype, or all original material associated with a validly published name, is demonstrably ambiguous and cannot be critically identified for purposes of the precise application of the name of a taxon (*ICN* Art. 9.8).

equivalent epithet
one that is a permitted translation, transliteration, transcription or certain abbreviations of an existing epithet or one that is taken to be identical even though there may be minor differences due to optional use of diacritical marks, such as accents (*ICNCP* Art. 35.9).

essentially derived variety
a cultivar which whilst clearly distinguishable retains the essential characteristics of the cultivar from which it is derived. Essentially derived cultivars may arise, for example, by mutation, selection or genetic engineering.

established name
one that meets the criteria laid out in the *ICNCP* (Art. 27).

establishment
a prime principle of nomenclature whereby certain criteria must have been fulfilled before an epithet is considered acceptable for use (*ICNCP* Art. 27).

extant
of a taxon, having living representatives.

F_1 hybrid (single cross)
a plant breeding term for the result of a repeatable single cross between two pure-bred lines (*ICNCP* Art. 2.16).

F_2 hybrid
a plant breeding term for the result of self-pollination within a population of an F_1 hybrid.

family
the principal category in the botanical nomenclatural hierarchy between order and genus (*ICN* Art. 3.1).

fancy name
a combination of the botanical or common name and cultivar epithet written in a language other than Latin.

forestry
the science and practice of the management of forests, either as crops or as natural habitats (silviculture).

form *(forma)*
the principal category in the botanical nomenclatural hierarchy below the rank of variety (*ICN* Art. 4.1).

formula mixture
a seed mixture made from known components to a pre-determined formula for a defined market.

gender
a grammatical characteristic of nouns in some languages that may determine the way in which they, and adjectives, articles and pronouns applied to them, are inflected; in Latin, Greek and many modern languages there are three genders: masculine, feminine and neuter.

gene bank
a place where genetic material is stored, usually as seed, and/or plant material, and conserved for future use.

generic (taxonomic)
pertaining to a genus.

generic (trademark)
the names of commercial products which are not restricted to a class of goods from a particular source (*ICNCP* Art. 8.1 Note 1).

generic designation
a name referring to any multiplicity of objects having one or more properties in common and that distinguishes it from other groups of similar objects; a term used in connection with Plant Breeders' Rights and equivalent to a cultivar epithet; a genus name (see: **designation**).

generic name
the name of a genus.

genetically modified plant
a plant with new characters following the deliberate implantation of alien genetic material.

genotype
the genetic make-up of an individual or population.

genus (plural *genera*)
the principal category in the nomenclatural hierarchy between family and species.

GMO
genetically modified organism **(**see: **genetically modified plant**).

graft-chimaera
a plant consisting of tissue from two or more different taxa in intimate association, originated by grafting (*ICNCP* Art. 2.10 & Art. 5.1).

graft hybrid – see: **graft-chimaera**

grafting
the (usually deliberate) fusion of tissue from two or more different plants.

greges – see: **grex**

grex (plural: grexes, or *greges* in classical Latin)
a formal category used in orchid nomenclature and applied to the progeny of an artificial cross from specified parents at species or grex level (*ICNCP* Art.4).

group
to assemble a number of items together (verb); an informal taxon not recognized in the *ICN* (noun).

Group
a formal category denoting an assemblage of cultivars, individual plants, or assemblages of plants on the basis of defined similarity (*ICNCP* Art. 3.1).

Hangeul
the Korean phonetic writing system.

Hanyu Pinyin Fang'an (Hanyu Pinyin; Pinyin)
the international standard for transcription of Chinese characters (**Hanzi**, q.v.) into a Roman script.

Hanzi
Chinese characters used in the Chinese writing system.

Hepburn
a widely used standard system for the Romanization of Japanese.

herbarium (plural: herbaria)
a collection of preserved botanical specimens stored together in such a way as to aid retrieval; the housing for such specimens.

herbarium specimen
a (usually dried) botanical specimen kept in a herbarium.

hierarchy – see: **nomenclatural hierarchy**

Hiragana
one of the Japanese systems of syllabic writing using phonograms.

holotype
in the *ICN*, the one specimen or illustration used by the author, or designated by the author, as the nomenclatural type of a name of a species or infraspecific taxon. As long as the holotype is extant, it fixes the application of the name concerned (*ICN* Art. 9.1).

homonym
one of two or more names or epithets spelled, or deemed to be spelled, exactly like another name or epithet, but which is applied to a different taxon of the same rank.

horticulture
the cultivation of ornamental, fruit and vegetable plants.

hybrid
the result of a cross between different plants or taxa. See also: **natural hybrid** and **artificial hybrid**

hybrid formula
the names of the parent taxa of a hybrid linked with a multiplication sign.

hyphen
a mark (-) used to link together two or more words so as to act as a single word.

IAPT – see: **International Association for Plant Taxonomy**

ICN – see: **International Code of Nomenclature for algae, fungi, and plants**

ICNCP – see: **International Code of Nomenclature for Cultivated Plants**

ICRA – see: **International Cultivar Registration Authority**

identification
the matching of a plant or specimen with an existing taxon.

illegitimate name
under the *ICN*, a name that is to be rejected (unless specifically conserved) as a later homonym or as being nomenclaturally superfluous when published (*ICN* Art. 52.1).

inbreeding
the production of offspring between closely related parents leading to a high degree of similarity; self-fertilization is the most intense form of inbreeding.

indelible autograph
handwritten material reproduced by some mechanical or graphic process such as lithography, offset, or metallic etching.

infrageneric
pertaining to any taxon below the rank of genus.

infraspecific
pertaining to any taxon below the rank of species.

initialism
a word derived from initial letters of a series of words or phrase each one of which is spoken individually.

International Association for Plant Taxonomy (IAPT)
an organization established to encourage and support all aspects of plant systematics and which is charged with preparing the International Code of Botanical Nomenclature.

International Code of Nomenclature for algae, fungi, and plants *(ICN)*
the set of international rules that provides for the formation and use of the scientific names in Latin of organisms treated as algae, fungi or plants (http://www.iapt-taxon.org/nomen/main.php).

International Code of Nomenclature for Cultivated Plants *(ICNCP)*
the set of international rules that provides for the formation and use of the names of cultivated plants, algae and fungi.

International Commission for the Nomenclature of Cultivated Plants
a body promoted by the International Union of Biological Sciences (IUBS) that formulates the *International Code of Nomenclature for Cultivated Plants* (*ICNCP*).

International Cultivar Registration Authority (ICRA)
an organization appointed by the ISHS Special Commission for Cultivar Registration to be responsible for registering cultivar, Group and grex names within defined taxa.

International Society for Horticultural Science (ISHS)
the organization (a scientific member of the International Union of Biological Sciences) established to promote the science of horticulture.

International Union of Biological Sciences (IUBS)
an organization promoting all disciplines within life sciences (*ICNCP* Appendix XI).

interstem
a piece of tissue that is from a different taxon to that of the rootstock and the scion which is inserted between them to enable the scion to be grown on the rootstock. It is also known as an interstock.

introducer
of a cultivar, the person who first distributes a cultivar.

ISHS – see: **International Society for Horticultural Science**

ISO
the initials of the International Organization for Standardization.

isotype
in the *ICN*, any duplicate of a holotype: it is always a specimen (*ICN* Art. 9.4).

italics
the printer's slanting typeface often used to distinguish scientific names when used in a formal taxonomic sense.

IUBS – see: **International Union of Biological Sciences**

Kanji
the Chinese characters adapted and used in the Japanese writing system.

journal
a serial publication issued at regular intervals.

Katakana
one of the Japanese systems of syllabic writing using phonograms.

Latin (botanical Latin)
the language derived from Renaissance Latin and earlier classical languages which is used for the international communication of plant names and other associated descriptive information.

lectotype
in the *ICN*, a specimen or illustration selected as the nomenclatural type when no holotype was indicated at the time of publication, or for as long as the holotype is missing, or if the holotype is found to belong to more than one taxon (*ICN* Art. 9.2).

legitimate name
applied in the *ICN* to names that are in accordance with the rules of nomenclature, i.e. those not defined as illegitimate (*ICN* Art. 6.5).

ligature
the typographical union of two letters of the alphabet.

line
a plant-breeding term used to describe plants resulting from repeated self-fertilization or inbreeding (*ICNCP* Art. 2.14).

lineage
one of one or more distinctive elements attributed to a cultivar where it cannot be established which of the elements represents the original concept of the cultivar (*ICNCP* Rec. 21N).

lump
to treat as members of a single taxon elements which have been previously considered as belonging to more than one such unit.

macron (overscore)
the diacritical mark (¯) sometimes used above vowels to indicate that they should be pronounced long.

maintenance
the product of the regeneration of a cultivar, either seed propagated or vegetatively propagated, which is representative of that cultivar (i.e. is true to type) and is sufficiently uniform.

manuscript
handwritten or typewritten material existing in only one or a few copies; writing in which each letter is placed on paper in sequence by hand, whether manually or mechanically, without any subsequent multiplication.

microfiche
a reproduction, much reduced in size, of many pages copied onto single photographic film sheets.

microfilm
a copy of a published work or manuscript, usually much reduced in size, onto a continuous strip of transparent photographic material.

microform
a term including microfiche and microfilm.

misapplied name
a plant name that has been incorrectly applied.

modern language
one currently in use.

morphological characters
the visible features of a plant that may be used in its description or diagnosis. Those features only visible by magnification may be referred to as micromorphological.

multiline
a plant-breeding term used to describe a cultivar that is made up of several closely related lines (*ICNCP* Art. 2.15).

multiplication sign (×)
in nomenclature, the symbol used to indicate a hybrid.

mutant
an individual produced as a result of mutation; the phenotypic expression of a mutant.

mutation
a spontaneous or engineered change in the genotype which may alter the phenotype.

mutation-chimaera
a plant which has one or more mutant tissues in intimate association with normal tissue (*ICNCP* Art. 2.10 & Art. 5.2).

name
in the sense of a *Code*, one that is established or validly published under the rules whether or not it is an accepted or correct name. See also: **epithet**

natural hybrid
the spontaneous combination of different plants or taxa, arising in the wild or in cultivation.

neotype
in the *ICN*, a specimen or illustration selected to serve as the nomenclatural type for as long as all of the material on which the name of the taxon was based is missing. (*ICN* Art. 9.7).

nomenclator
an authoritative catalogue or other listing of names comprising correct or accepted names and their synonyms; one who compiles such a catalogue or list.

nomenclatural
relating to nomenclature.

nomenclatural hierarchy
the categories of taxa arranged in order according to their rank. Under the *ICN* a lower taxon cannot belong to more than one taxon in the rank above; however, the *ICNCP* does allow for the inclusion of a cultivar in more than one Group in contrast to the principle of strict inclusivity enshrined in the *ICN*.

nomenclatural standard (standard)
a specimen, printed photograph or other illustration to which the name of a cultivar or Group is permanently attached.

nomenclatural type (type)
the type of a name at the rank of species or below is a specimen, or in some cases an illustration, to which the name of a taxon is permanently attached. The nomenclatural type is not necessarily the most typical or representative element of a taxon (*ICN* Art. 7.2). The type of a name above the rank of species is the name of a taxon at the next principal rank below.

nomenclature
a system of names and provisions for their formation and use.

nominant
one who invents or coins a name.

non-statutory registration
approval and publication of plant names by any organization, agency, or individual entrusted with this duty. See also: **ICRA**

nothogenus
a name at generic level for a hybrid between two or more species in different genera, customarily preceded by a multiplication sign (×).

nothospecies
a name at species level for a hybrid between two or more species, customarily preceded by a multiplication sign (×).

nothotaxon
examples include **nothogenus** and **nothospecies**; infraspecific nothotaxa are also described.

original spelling
the spelling employed when a name was established.

orthographical error
an unintentional error in spelling or use of characters.

orthographical variant
an alternative and usually incorrect spelling or use of characters. See also: **equivalent epithet**

orthography
correct spelling or use of characters or punctuation.

out-cross
hybridization between different populations of plants which may extend their original gene pools and thus alter their original characters.

overscore – see: **macron**

paratype
in the *ICN*, a specimen cited in the protologue that is neither the holotype nor an isotype, nor one of the syntypes if two or more specimens were simultaneously designated as types (. *ICN* Art. 9.6).

parentheses
round brackets (...).

person
in this *Code* can be either an individual or a corporate body (organization).

phase
a distinct stage in the growth cycle of a plant.

phenotype
the sum total of all the characteristics of an individual plant; the physical expression of the genotype.

phenotypic
pertaining to the phenotype.

physiological characters
the characters related to functional mechanisms of a plant such as flowering induction.

Pinyin – see: **Hanyu Pinyin Fang'an**

Plant Breeders' Rights (PBR)
the are intellectual property rights granted to the breeder of a new variety of plant, also known as Plant Variety Rights (PVR).

plant patent
a grant of right, available in certain countries, which provides a means of control over a new plant's propagation and sale for a given period.

Plant Variety Rights – see: **Plant Breeders' Rights**

pollination
the act of transferring pollen from the male part of a flower to the female part of a flower.

polyploid
having more than two sets of chromosomes. Examples include triploid (3 sets), tetraploid (4 sets), pentaploid (5 sets), hexaploid (6 sets) and decaploid (10 sets).

polymorphic
with many forms.

precedence – see: **priority**

prefix
a letter or group of letters attached before the main part of a word.

pre-Linnaean
a name or work published before the starting point of plant nomenclature (Linnaeus's *Species Plantarum*, 1 May 1753).

Principle
in a *Code*, a fundamental precept which the Articles are designed to satisfy.

printed matter
text or illustrations mechanically reproduced by printing in considerable quantities and in intentionally permanent form.

printing
a process for producing identical copies by transferring an image of text or illustrations in ink from a prepared surface.

priority
a prime principle of nomenclature whereby the earliest established name takes precedence over later names for the same taxon at a particular rank.

protologue
everything published in connection with a name upon its establishment.

provenance
the known geographic origin of plants or seeds. Used by foresters to describe worthwhile selections from indigenous populations, and in plant conservation.

provisional name
one that is not established but is proposed in anticipation of the recognition of a taxon with a particular circumscription, position, or rank. See also: **reserved name**

publication
(1) a principle of nomenclature in a *Code* whereby certain rules must have been fulfilled before establishment is assessed, usually achieved by the distribution of dated printed matter, so as to make it available to the community; (2) printed matter distributed through sale, exchange, or gift into the public domain; (3) the act or process of distributing printed matter.

publish
to issue a publication; to make public in such work any names or other nomenclatural acts.

published
of a name, one that fulfils the requirements of publication.

publishing author
the author who is principally responsible for a contribution published in a book, periodical, etc., and to whom included names or nomenclatural acts are to be attributed.

quotation marks
marks used to enclose one or more words: double quotation marks may be used to indicate quoted passages from one text in another, single quotation marks are placed around the epithet of a cultivar name.

rank
the relative position of a category within the nomenclatural hierarchy. The principal ranks in the *ICN* are species, genus, family, order and class (*ICN* Art. 3.1).

Recommendations
procedures in a *Code* that one is strongly encouraged to follow.

register
a published list of names that have been registered with an ICRA or deemed to have been registered by an ICRA.

registered name
one which is submitted to an ICRA for registration, meets the requirements of the *ICNCP* and is published by the Registrar (*ICNCP* Division IV.1 Note 1).

registered trademark
a trademark that has been formally accepted by a statutory trademark authority, distinguished by the international symbol ®.

registrant
a person submitting a name to a registration authority for registration.

Registrar
the person appointed by an International Cultivar Registration Authority (ICRA) to carry out registration activity on its behalf.

registration
the act of recording a new name or epithet by a registration authority. See also: **non-statutory registration** and **statutory registration**

reject
to set aside a name of a taxon in favour of another.

rejected name
one that is not to be used either as a result of failure to comply with certain Rules (*ICNCP* Art. 31.1) or by ruling of the International Commission for Nomenclature of Cultivated Plants and formally listed in *ICNCP* Appendix VI.

replacement name
one published to replace an older name that is contrary to the *ICN* and for which no other name exists; the replacement or 'new name' is typified by the same material as the older name.

reserved name
one that has not been established but that may have been recorded by an International Cultivar Registration Authority (ICRA) as likely to become duly registered. Such names have no status under rules of nomenclature.

retroactive
active back in time; nomenclaturally, unless expressly stated, a provision in a *Code* is operational regardless of when it became part of that *Code*, and applies equally to any and all names proposed after the accepted date at which establishment (valid publication) for a particular taxon begins.

Romaji
a system of Romanized spelling for the Japanese language.

roman
the printers' font that is not italics.

Roman alphabet
the characters originally derived from Latin used for writing words in most Western cultures.

Roman script
a writing system using the Roman alphabet.

Romanization
the conversion of characters, signs or letters of a non-Roman writing system into a Roman script.

rootstock
the living material upon which a scion is grafted.

Rules
in a *Code*, regulations which must be followed.

scientific name
the name of a taxon formed and maintained under the rules of the international codes of nomenclature.

scion
the vegetative bud or shoot containing buds that is used for grafting.

seed bank
a place where seed is held for safekeeping. See also: **gene bank**

selection
a plant or assemblage of plants that has been isolated from a cultivar on the basis of a minor differences in characters.

selling name – see: **trade designation**

sensu lato
used to mean "in a broad sense".

sensu stricto
used to mean "in a narrow sense".

Series
a device usually used to associate a number of cultivars. They may differ from each other only in one character, often flower colour.

series
a category in the botanical nomenclatural hierarchy between the rank of genus and species (*ICN* Art. 4.1).

Series mixture
a term used in seed-marketing to denote a mixture of cultivars from a series.

sexual propagation
in plants, the propagation by means of seed resulting from fertilization.

silviculture
The cultivation of trees as crops (see **forestry**).

simultaneous publication
the publication of two or more names for a single taxon in the same work, usually by the same author.

Special Commission for Cultivar Registration
a body of the International Society for Horticultural Science (ISHS) that deals with matters connected with and promotes the registration of names of cultivated plants.

species (*species*)
the basic category in the nomenclatural hierarchy governed by the *ICN*.

species name
formed from the combination of a generic name and a specific epithet

specimen
a plant, or part of a plant, gathered, preserved or cultivated for scientific study.

spelling
the means of rendering words or names in writing with letters.

split
the division of a taxon into two or more taxa.

sport
an apparent mutation which has occurred on part of a plant.

stability
a state in which change is uncommon; in nomenclature, the maintenance of names which are in use.

stable
a condition in which the relevant characteristics of a taxon remain unchanged over time.

standard – see: **nomenclatural standard**

standard portfolio
the arrangement by which a nomenclatural standard and any allied material relating to it are to be kept together.

starting point
the date on which establishment of names in a particular taxon begins.

statutory epithet
an epithet recognized and listed by a statutory plant registration authority.

statutory plant registration authority
an organization established by legal enactment of a particular country or by a legal treaty between countries entrusted with the task of establishing plant variety denominations in relation to Plant Breeders' Rights.

statutory registration
approval and listing by a statutory plant registration authority.

strain
a confused term having several meanings; in cultivated plant nomenclature: often referring to a seed-raised cryptic variety. See also: **maintenance** and **selection**

subspecies (*subspecies*)
the category in the nomenclatural hierarchy between species (*species*) and variety (*varietas*).

suffix
a letter or an element added to the end of a word or stem to form a derivative word.

superfluous
in the *ICN,* a name which is has been validly published and includes the type of a valid and legitimate previously published name that should be used; in cultivated plants a later synonym.

symbol
a written character or mark used to represent something.

synonym
an established (validly published) name for a particular taxon that is not the accepted (correct) name (*ICNCP* Art. 11.2).

synonymy
a list of names considered to apply to a given taxon other than its accepted name.

syntype
in the *ICN*, any specimen cited in the protologue when no holotype was designated, or any one of two or more specimens simultaneously designated as types (*ICN* Art. 9.5).

tautonym
a species or cultivar epithet that repeats the name of the genus to which it is assigned: not acceptable under the *ICN* (Art. 23.4) or recommended under the *ICNCP* (Rec. 21B.1).

taxon (plural: taxa)
a group into which a number of similar organisms may be classified.

Taxon
the official journal of the International Association for Plant Taxonomy.

taxonomic unit – see: **taxon**

teratological plant
a deformed or otherwise grossly abnormal plant.

teratology
the study of abnormalities or monstrosities of organisms.

termination – see **ending** and **suffix**

tone mark
in Pinyin of the Chinese language this is a mark added to a vowel in a syllable to indicate the pitch of the syllable in pronounciation. The marks resemble European diacritics but serve a different function.

topophysic cultivar
a clone with the same genotype as its original parent plant but differing in its phenotype due to it being originally asexually propagated from specific tissue on the parent plant (*ICNCP* Art. 2.6).

topovariant
a distinguishable group of plants grown from seed from a given provenance (*ICNCP* Art. 2.13).

trade designation
a device that is used to market a plant in place of, or in addition to, an accepted or adopted name (*ICNCP* Art. 13.1).

trademark (™)
any sign, usually made from words, letters, numbers, or other devices such as logotypes, that individualizes the goods of a given enterprise and distinguishes them from the goods of its competitors. See also: **registered trademark**

trade name – see: **trade designation**

translation
the rendering of words of one language in another language.

transliteration
the rendering of words in one alphabetic script to another alphabetic script.

transcription
to copy verbatim from one written work to another; the rendering in written form of sounds of human speech, especially of languages employing non-alphabetic or phonetic characters.

transformed plant – see: **genetically modified plant**

type – see: **nomenclatural type**

typification
the act of designating or selecting a nomenclatural type for a name.

typographical error
an error introduced by a printer.

typography
the visual presentation of printed words and numbers.

umlaut
two dots placed over a vowel to indicate a difference in pronunciation of the vowel. It is a specific example of a diacritical mark (*q.v.*) and should not be confused with a diaeresis (*q.v.*).

undetermined (abbreviation: **indet.**)
of a specimen, not identified.

UNESCO
the acronym for United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization.

uniform
a condition in which relevant characters of a taxon do not vary beyond a defined limit.

UPOV
the acronym for the Union Internationale pour la Protection des Obtentions Végétales (the International Union for the Protection of New Varieties of Plants), the international body charged with overseeing the administration of Plant Breeders' Rights.

variant
a plant or group of plants which shows some measure of difference from the characteristics associated with a particular taxon.

variety (*varietas*)
the principal category in the botanical nomenclatural hierarchy between species and form (*forma*).

variety
term used in some national and international legislation for a clearly distinguishable taxon below the rank of species; generally, in legislative texts, a term equivalent to cultivar. See also: **cultivar** and **variety** (*varietas*)

variety denomination
the epithet for a cultivar designated under the terminology of a statutory plant registration authority. See also: **statutory epithet**

vegetative propagation
a specific method of asexual propagation.

voucher specimen
a nominated specimen representing the plant or taxon mentioned in a text or one that is complementary to material specially preserved for studying DNA, cytology, pollen, etc.

wild plant
one that originated in the wild.

witches' broom
a mass of congested, often stunted, stems and foliage on a woody plant.

word element
a component part of a word; the parts of a word separated by hyphens.

work
in nomenclature, any pertinent written information, whether published or unpublished.

written
for the purposes of the *ICNCP* the word is used to refer to any form of published material.

Index to Scientific Names

All references are to Division II (Rules and Recommendations) unless indicated otherwise. This index is only for names in a Roman script.

Abies
– *amabilis* ‘Spreading Star’ 2. Ex. 2
– *koreana* ‘Prostrate Beauty’ 2. Ex. 2
Abutilon Darwinii Group 22. Ex. 2
Acer platanoides ‘Drummondii’ 2. Ex. 6
Achillea
– ‘Cerise Queen’ 21. Ex. 2
– *millefolium* ‘Cerise Queen’ 21. Ex. 2
Achimenes ‘Show-off’ 35. Ex. 13
Aconitum napellus subsp. *lobelianum* ‘Bergfürst’ 8. Ex. 5
Aerides
– *multiflorum* 4. Ex. 3
– *roseum* 4. Ex. 3
× *Agroelymus* Div. III. Ex. 7
× *Agrohordeum* Div. III. Ex. 7, 9
× *Agropogon* Div. III. Ex. 2
Agropyron Div. III. Ex. 7, 9
– *intermedium* ‘Clarke’ 2. Ex. 13
Agrostis Div. III. Ex. 2
Alcea
– Chater’s Double Group 8. Ex. 2
– *rosea* ‘Chater’s Double Group’ 8. Ex. 2
Allium cepa Shallot Group 22. Ex. 1
Alonsoa warscewiczii ‘Peachy-keen’ 35. Ex. 13
× *Alpingera* Div. III. Ex. 2
Alpinia Div. III. Ex. 2
× *Amarcrinum* Div. III. Ex. 3
Amaryllis Div. III. Ex. 3
Anacamptis Div. III. Ex. 2
apple
– ‘Blauschwanz’ 13. Ex. 5
– ‘Bramley’s Seedling’ 21. Ex. 67
– ‘Bramley’s Wonder’ 21. Ex. 67
– ‘Earliest of All’ 21. Ex. 51
– ‘East Malling Champion’ 21. Ex. 68
– ‘James Grieve’ 21. Ex. 4
– ‘King of the Pippins’ 13. Ex. 5
– ‘Redskin’ 21. Ex. 66
äpple
– GULDPARMÄN (‘King of the Pippins’) 13. Ex. 5
– KESÄTER (‘Blauschwanz’) 13. Ex. 5
Arachnis Div. III. Ex. 8
Argyranthemum
– ‘Ohmadsant’ 11. Ex. 1
– ‘Qinta White’ (“Quinta White”) 35. Ex. 4
– SANTANA ‘Ohmadsant’ 11. Ex. 1
Ascocentrum Div. III. Ex. 1, 6
ash ‘Veronica’ 21. Ex. 39
Asparagus
– *officinalis*
– – ‘Calet’ 2. Ex. 1
– – ‘Lucullus’ 2. Ex. 13
Aspasia Div. III. Ex. 5
Aster amellus ‘Veilchenkoenigin’ (‘Veilchenkönigin’) 35. Ex. 6
Astrantia major ‘Sunningdale Variegated’ (“Sunningdale Var.”) 35. Ex. 8

Ballota nigra ‘Archer’s Variety’ 2. Ex. 8
barley ‘OAC Baxter’ 21. Ex. 26
× *Beallara* Div. III. Ex. 5
Begonia
– Elatior Group 3. Ex. 13, 8. Ex. 4, 15. Ex. 1
– ‘Elegantissima Superba’ 21. Ex. 16
Belladonna Div. III. Ex. 3
Beta
– Spinach Beet Group 22. Ex. 3
– *vulgaris* ‘SP6 926-0’ 2. Ex. 12
Betula
– *pendula* ‘Penla’ 2. Ex. 10
– *utilis* ‘Doorenbos’ Div. V. Ex. 1
Bletilla
– Penway Dragon grex 8. Ex. 7
– Penway Prelude grex (Penway Dancer Group) ‘Ballerina’ 16. Ex. 4
Brachyglottis
– Dunedin Group 3. Ex. 7

– Dunedin Hybrids 3. Ex. 7
Brassia Div. III. Ex. 5
Brassica
– *oleracea*
– – Brussels Sprout Group 11. Ex. 2, 32. Ex. 5
– – Gemmifera Group 8. Ex. 6, 11. Ex. 2, 22. Ex. 1
– – Groupe du Chou de Bruxelles 32. Ex. 5
– – 'King Arthur' 2. Ex. 14
– – 'Nichtschiessender' 32. Ex. 1
– – Rosenkohl Gruppe 32. Ex. 5
– – var. *sabauda* 3. Ex. 6
– – Sabauda Group 3. Ex. 6
– – (Sabauda Group) 'Cantasa' 15. Ex. 2
– – Sabellica Gruppe 15. Ex. 1
– *rapa* Pak-choi Group 22. Ex. 2
× *Brilliandeara* Div. III. Ex. 5
Buxus sempervirens 2. Ex. 27

Cactaceae 6. Ex. 2
Calanthe
– × *dominyi* 1. Ex. 3
– *masuca* 1. Ex. 3
– *triplicata* 1. Ex. 3
Calluna
– 'Heather' 21. Ex. 40
– *vulgaris*
– – 'Aurea' 21. Ex. 16
– – 'Redgauntlet' ("Red Gauntlet") 35. Ex. 4
'Calluna' heather 21. Ex. 39
'Calypso' *Rhododendron* 21. Ex. 39
'Cambridge Favourite' morangueiro 8. Ex. 1
'Cambridge Favourite' strawberry 8. Ex. 1
Camellia
– 'Daisy Eagleson' ("+ Daisy Eagleson") 14. Ex. 4, 24. Ex. 4
– *japonica* 14. Ex. 4, 24. Ex. 4
– *sasanqua* 'Maiden's Blush' 14. Ex. 4, 24. Ex. 4
– 'Shōjō-no-mai' 21. Ex. 3
Campanula trachelium 'Bernice' 2. Ex. 19
Capsicum annuum 'Delight' 2. Ex. 14
Carex 21. Ex. 38
– 'Fuiri-Tenjiku' 21. Ex. 38
– *phyllocephala* 21. Ex. 38
– 'Yodo-no-yuki' 35. Ex. 14
Castanea 'Pale Chestnut' 21. Ex. 33
Cattleya Div. III. Ex. 6
– × *claesiana* 23. Ex. 4
– Claesiana grex 23. Ex. 4
– *intermedia* 23. Ex. 4
– *loddigesii* 23. Ex. 4
Cedrus
– *atlantica* 29. Ex. 3
– – 'Aurea' 29. Ex. 3
– *libani* 29. Ex. 3
– – subsp. *atlantica* 'Mt St Catherine' 21. Ex. 5
– – 'Atlantica Aurea' 29. Ex. 3
– – Atlantica Group 29. Ex. 3
– – 'Aurea' 29. Ex. 3
– 'Mount Saint Catherine' ('Mt St Catherine') 21. Ex. 5, 35. Ex. 9
Cenchrus ciliaris 'Higgins' 2. Ex. 16
Cereus hildmannianus 'Monstrosus' 2. Ex. 20
Chamaecyparis
– *lawsoniana*
– – 'Ellwoodii' 2. Ex. 3
– – 'Green Pillar' 11. Ex. 3
– – 'Jackman's Variety' 11. Ex. 3
– – 'Silver Queen' 8. Ex. 5
– *pisifera* 29. Ex. 4
– – 'Squarrosa' 29. Ex. 4
Choisya
– 'Limo' 17. Ex. 1
– *ternata*
– – GOLDFINGERS 'Limo' 17. Ex. 1
– – 'Limo' 17. Ex. 1
"*Choisya ternata* Goldfingers" 17. Ex. 1
Chrysanthemum 'Dewhite Improved' 31. Ex. 2
Clematis
– BLUE ANGEL ('Błękitny Anioł') 32. Ex. 3
– 'Cadmy' 11. Ex. 4
– 'Ed. André' ('Edouard André') 35. Ex. 9
– 'Edouard André' 35. Ex. 9
– *florida* 21. Ex. 43
– 'Florida Blue' 21. Ex. 43
– 'Morning Yellow' 11. Ex. 4
– MORNING YELLOW 'Cadmy' 11. Ex. 4
Cochlioda Div. III. Ex. 5, 6
× *Cogniauxara* Div. III. Ex. 8
Comparettia Div. III. Ex. 6
Coprosma 'The Shiner' ("Shiner") 31. Ex. 6
Coryanthes macrantha 31. Ex. 7
Corydalis taliensis ACE 2443 ('ACE 2443', 'Ace 2443') 21. Ex. 57

× *Coryhopea*
– Butler's Balzac grex 31. Ex. 7
– Off the Wall grex 31. Ex. 7
Corylus
– *avellana* 2. Ex. 24
– *colurna* 2. Ex. 24
Cotoneaster × *watereri* Div. V. Ex. 2
+ *Crataegomespilus* 24. Ex. 2, 27. Ex. 2
– 'Dardarii' 2. Ex. 7, 24. Ex. 3, 24. Ex. 5
– 'Jules d'Asnières' 24. Ex. 5
Crataegus 24. Ex. 1, 2, 27. Ex. 2
– *monogyna* 2. Ex. 7, 24. Ex. 3, 24. Ex. 5
× *Crataemespilus* 24. Ex. 2
– *gillotii* 24. Ex. 3
"× *Crindonna*" Div. III. Ex. 3
Crinum Div. III. Ex. 3
Crocus
– *chrysanthus*
– – 'E.A. Bowles' ("Edward Augustus Bowles") 35. Ex. 10
– – 'Eye-catcher' 35. Ex. 13
Cucumis
– *flexuosus* 27. Ex. 5
– *melo* Flexuosus Group 27. Ex. 5
– *sativus* NOA'S FORCING ('Noas Treib') 32. Ex. 3
Cucurbita
– Kabocha Group 32. Ex. 6
– Kabocha-Gruppen 32. Ex. 6
Cyclamen hederifolium var. *hederifolium* f. *albiflorum* (Bowles's Apollo Group) 'Artemis' 21. Ex. 58
Cydonia oblonga 'Malling C' 2. Ex. 23
Cymbidium
– Alexanderi 16. Ex. 2
– Alexanderi gx 16. Ex. 2
– (Alexanderi gx) 'Westonbirt' 16. Ex. 1
– Alexanderi gx 'Westonbirt' 16. Ex. 1
Cytisus purpureus 24. Ex. 1

Dahlia 'Northwest Cosmos' 21. Ex. 42
Daphne × *burkwoodii* 'Carol Mackie' 2. Ex. 6
'Daphne' *Magnolia* 21. Ex. 39
Delphinium
– 'Astolat' 2. Ex. 8
– 'Cranberry Delight' Div. V. Ex. 4
– 'Princess Caroline Sunrise' 27. Ex. 4
Dendrobium
– Alan Mann grex 4. Ex. 2
– Caesar grex 4. Ex. 2
– *lasianthera* 4. Ex. 2
– *ostrinoglossum* 4. Ex. 2
– Soo Chee grex 4. Ex. 2
× *Devereuxara* Div. III. Ex. 6
Dianthus Div. V. Ex. 3
– "Devon Opal" 21. Ex. 62
– 'Giulia Viola' 21. Ex. 42
– LADY MADONNA ('WP04 Opal') 21. Ex. 62
– 'M. Charles Coëz' ('Monsieur Charles Coëz') 35. Ex. 10
– "Opal" 21. Ex. 62
– 'Rupert's Pink' 21. Ex. 34
– 'Samur' 21. Ex. 46
– 'Samura' 21. Ex. 46
– 'Samurai' 21. Ex. 46
– 'Sara' 21. Ex. 46
– 'Victoria' 21. Ex. 39
– 'William Sim' 2. Ex. 18, 21. Ex. 4
– 'Zara' 21. Ex. 46
Dieffenbachia
– 'Compacta' 11. Ex. 4
– 'Exotica' 11. Ex. 4
– 'Exotica Compacta' 11. Ex. 4
– 'Exotica Perfecta' 11. Ex. 4
– 'Exotica Perfecta Compacta' 11. Ex. 4
Digitalis 'Mertonensis' ("× Mertonensis") 14. Ex. 5
Distictis
– *buccinatoria* 14. Ex. 5
– *laxiflora* 14. Ex. 5
– 'Mrs Rivers' ("× Mrs Rivers") 14. Ex. 5
Dracaena
– Deremensis Group 22. Ex. 1
– *fragrans*
– – (Deremensis Group) 'Christianne' 15. Ex. 2
– – 'Massangeana' (*D. massangeana*) Div. V. Ex. 5
– *massangeana* hort. ex. Rodigas Div. V. Ex. 5
Drehwurz Awful grex 8. Ex. 3

× *Elyhordeum* Div. III. Ex. 7
× *Elymotriticum* Div. III. Ex. 7
Elymus Div. III. Ex. 7
Endymion hispanicus 'Rose Queen' 21. Ex. 9
Epimedium
– *alpinum* 21. Ex. 61

– *pinnatum* 21. Ex. 61
– × *warleyense* 21. Ex. 61
– – 'Willmottiae' 21. Ex. 61
Epiphyllum Div. III. Ex. 2
– 'Germany's Best' 21. Ex. 52
Eragrostis curvula 'Catalina' 2. Ex. 16
Erdbeere 'Cambridge Favourite' 8. Ex. 1
Erica
– 'Calluna' 21. Ex. 39
– *carnea*
– – 'Mrs D. E. Maxwell' 21. Ex. 47
– – 'S. A. Maxwell' 21. Ex. 47
– *cinerea*
– – 'Lily' 31. Ex. 8
– – 'Lily Evelyn' 31. Ex. 8
– *vagans*
– – var. *kevernensis* 29. Ex. 2
– – 'Kevernensis' 29. Ex. 2
– – 'Mrs D. F. Maxwell' 21. Ex. 47
– – 'St Keverne' 29. Ex. 2
– × *williamsii* 'Cow-y-Jack' 35. Ex. 13
'Erica' *Lilium* 21. Ex. 39
Eriobotrya Div. III. Ex. 2
Erodium daucoides 'Pico de Fraile' 27. Ex. 3
Etlingera Div. III. Ex. 2
Euanthe Div. III. Ex. 8
– *sanderiana* Div. III. Ex. 8
Eucalyptus camaldulensis 2. Ex. 11

Fagus
– *sylvatica* 20. Ex. 1
– – var. *atropunicea* 29. Ex. 1
– – 'Atropunicea' 29. Ex. 1
– – Atropunicea Group 11. Ex. 2, 20. Ex. 4, 29. Ex. 1
– – (Atropunicea Group) 'Riversii' 15. Ex. 2
– – f. *atropurpurea* 29. Ex. 1
– – Cuprea Group 20. Ex. 4
– – Groupe à Feuilles Pourpres 32. Ex. 4
– – Gruppo con Foglie Purpuree 32. Ex. 4
– – Purple-leaved Group 11. Ex. 2, 22. Ex. 2, 32. Ex. 4
– – Purpurblätterige Gruppe 32. Ex. 4
Festuca
– *rubra*
– – Hexaploid Creeping Group 3. Ex. 3
– – Hexaploid Non-creeping Group 3. Ex. 3
– – Octoploid Creeping Group 3. Ex. 3

Ficus
– *binnendijkii*
– – 'Alii' 2. Ex. 3
– – 'Amstel King' 2. Ex. 3
– – 'Amstel Queen' 2. Ex. 3
Filipendula ulmaria 'Variegata' 2. Ex. 6
Fragaria
– × *ananassa* 'Cambridge Favourite' 8. Ex. 1
– 'Cambridge Favourite' 8. Ex. 1
fraisier 'Cambridge Favourite' 8. Ex. 1
Fraxinus pennsylvanica 'Newport' 2. Ex. 1
Fuchsia 'Shangri-La' 35. Ex. 13
Funckia albomarginata 21. Ex. 59

Galanthus
– 'Celia Blakeway-Phillips' 35. Ex. 13
– 'John Gray' 21. Ex. 1
Gaultheria 6. Ex. 3
Geranium
– 'Herb Robert' 21. Ex. 40
– 'Mrs Kendall Clark' 21. Ex. 5
– *pratense* 'Mrs Kendall Clark' 21. Ex. 5
– *robertianum* 21. Ex. 40
Gerbera 'Delphi' 2. Ex. 1
Geum 'Lady Stratheden' 2. Ex. 8
Gladiolus 'Pink Gladiolus' 21. Ex. 33
Glycine max 'Jupiter-R' 2. Ex. 13
'Golden Harvest' daffodil 21. Ex. 4
Gymnadenia Div. III. Ex. 2, 4
× *Gymnanacamptis* Div. III. Ex. 2
Gymnocalycium 28. Ex. 5
– 'Black Cap' 2. Ex. 26
– 'Hibotan' 2. Ex. 26
– 'Rosebud' 2. Ex. 26

Hebe
– 'Longacre Variety' 21. Ex. 29
– *pinguifolia* 'Sutherlandii' 21. Ex. 12
Hedera
– *helix* 'Arborescens' 2. Ex. 3
– – 'Baden-Baden' 35. Ex. 13
Helianthus
– *annuus*
– – 'E9730LM' 21. Ex. 55
– – 'H 209 A/B' 21. Ex. 55
– – 'HA306' 2. Ex. 12
– – 'HA-OL 9' 21. Ex. 55
– – 'NS-HA26' 21. Ex. 55
– – 'PF 090 A' 21. Ex. 55

– – ‘PR64A82’ 21. Ex. 55
Hemerocallis
– ‘Knights in White Satin’ 21. Ex. 6
– ‘Now and Forever’ 21. Ex. 6
– ‘Potion for Passion’ 21. Ex. 6
– ‘Pure and Simple’ 21. Ex. 6
– *sieboldii* 21. Ex. 59
– ‘Trimmed in Gold’ 21. Ex. 6
Hepatica ‘Niigata-no-yuki’ 34. Ex. 6
Hibiscus
– *rosa-sinensis* 6. Ex. 1
– *syriacus*
– – BLUE BIRD (‘L’Oiseau Bleu’) 32. Ex. 3
– – ‘Hanbora’ 34. Ex. 4
– – ‘Hangyeore’ 34. Ex. 4
– – ‘Hansomi’ 34. Ex. 4
– – ‘L’Oiseau Bleu’ 32. Ex. 3
– – ‘Violaceus’ 21. Ex. 16
Hippophae rhamnoides ‘Ram’ 2. Ex. 10
hollyhock ‘Chater’s Double Group’ 8. Ex. 2
× *Holttumara* Div. III. Ex. 8
Hordeum Div. III. Ex. 7, 9
Hosta 21. Ex. 37
– *fortunei* 3. Ex. 5, 29. Ex. 5
– – ‘Albopicta’ 29. Ex. 5
– Fortunei Group 3. Ex. 5
– (Fortunei Group) ‘Albopicta’ 29. Ex. 5
– ‘Frances Williams’ 22. Ex. 8
– Frances Williams Group 22. Ex. 8
– ‘Halcyon’ 2. Ex. 21
– ‘June’ 2. Ex. 21
– ‘Ōgon-Setouchi’ 34. Ex. 7
– *pycnophylla* ‘Ōgon-Setouchi’ 21. Ex. 37
– ‘Shelleys’ (“Shelley’s”) 35. Ex. 17
– *sieboldii* 21. Ex. 59
– – ‘Albomarginata’ 21. Ex. 59
– – ‘Sieboldii’ 21. Ex. 59
Hyacinthoides
– *hispanica* ‘Rose Queen’ 21. Ex. 9
– × *massartiana* ‘Rose Queen’ 21. Ex. 9
Hydrangea
– Lacecap Group 22. Ex. 1
– *macrophylla* Groupe Hortensis 15. Ex. 1
+ *Hylocalycium* 28. Ex. 5
Hylocereeae 6. Ex. 2
Hylocereus 28. Ex. 5
– *undatus* 2. Ex. 26
+ *Hylogymnocalycium* 28. Ex. 5
Hypericum
– *androsaemum* 1. Ex. 2
– *hircinum* 1. Ex. 2
– × *inodorum* 1. Ex. 2
– *perforatum* ‘Topaz’ 2. Ex. 16
– ‘Rowallane Variety’ 21. Ex. 29

Ilex
– *crenata* ‘Greenpoint’ 21. Ex. 44
– ‘Green Point’ 21. Ex. 44
– × *meserveae* ‘Blue Angel’ 28. Ex. 3
– – ‘Mesog’ 28. Ex. 3
– *myrtifolia* ‘Aurea’ 2. Ex. 6
Ionopsis Div. III. Ex. 6
Iris
– ‘American Flag’ 21. Ex. 66
– ‘Cantab’ 8. Ex. 4, 14. Ex. 1
– “Cantab”, cv. Cantab, var. Cantab 14. Ex. 1
– *chrysographes* ‘Inshriach’ (“Inshriach Form”) 21. Ex. 29
– Dutch Group 3. Ex. 2
– *tingitana* 3. Ex. 2
– *unguicularis* ‘Kilndown’ 2. Ex. 5
– *xiphium*
– – var. *lusitanica* 3. Ex. 2
– – var. *praecox* 3. Ex. 2

Juniperus
– *chinensis*
– – ‘Plumosa Aureovariegata’ 2. Ex. 6
– – ‘Variegata’ 21. Ex. 15
– *excelsa*
– – ‘Variegata’ 21. Ex. 15
– – ‘Viridis Stricta’ (*viridis stricta*) 21. Ex. 14
– *horizontalis* ‘Variegata’ 21. Ex. 15
– *procumbens* ‘Variegata’ 21. Ex. 15
– *sabina* ‘Variegata’ 21. Ex. 15
– ‘Variegata’ 21. Ex. 15

Laburnum
– *anagyroides* 24. Ex. 1
– ‘Latest and Longest’ 21. Ex. 51
Lactuca sativa ‘Kagraner Sommer’ 2. Ex. 12
lady’s tresses Awful gx 8. Ex. 3
Laelia Div. III. Ex. 6
Lapageria Div. III. Ex. 9
Larix
– *decidua* ‘Cervicornis’ 28. Ex. 1
– *europaea* var. *cervicornis* 28. Ex. 1

– *kaempferi* ‘Palsgård Velling’ 2. Ex. 10
Lavatera ‘Ice Cool’ 2. Ex. 8
Lessingia
– *filaginifolia* 20. Ex. 3
– – ‘Silver Carpet’ 20. Ex. 3
× *Leucadenia* Div. III. Ex. 4
Leucorchis Div. III. Ex. 4
Lilium
– Bellingham Group 21. Ex. 67
– ‘Bellingham Supreme’ 21. Ex. 67
– ‘Brandywine’ 2. Ex. 15
– Celica Group 22. Ex. 5
– Darkest Red Group 3. Ex. 8
– Darkest Red Selections 3. Ex. 8
– ‘Erica’ 21. Ex. 39
– ‘Henri’ 21. Ex. 43
– *henryi* 21. Ex. 43
– *kelloggii* 22. Ex. 6
– Mount Shasta grex 22. Ex. 6
– Mount Shasta Group 22. Ex. 6
– *pardalinum* 22. Ex. 6
– ‘Pumpkin Sweet’ 22. Ex. 5
– ‘Tetra Brandywine’ 2. Ex. 15
– ‘Unique’ 22. Ex. 5
Lotus corniculatus ‘Cree’ 2. Ex. 13
Lycaste
– *aromatica* ‘Saint Thomas’ 6. Ex. 5
– *deppei* 1. Ex. 3
– ‘Saint Thomas’ 6. Ex. 5
– *skinneri* 1. Ex. 3
– × *smeeana* 1. Ex. 3
– Wyld Spirit grex ‘Saint Thomas’ 6. Ex. 5
Lycianthes 6. Ex. 4
Lycopersicon 6. Ex. 4
Lycoris ‘Daensing Seuwan’ 34. Ex. 5

Macroptilium atropurpureum ‘Aztec’ 2. Ex. 13
Magnolia
– Buxom Nordic Blonde Group 3. Ex. 14
– ‘Daphne’ 21. Ex. 39
– Gresham Hybrids (Gresham Group) 3. Ex. 14
– Svelte Brunette Group 3. Ex. 14
– ‘William Watson’ 21. Ex. 3
Mahonia ‘Japonica’ (*M. japonica*) 21. Ex. 10
Malus
– *domestica*
– – ‘Beauty of Bath’ 21. Ex. 8
– – ‘Charles Ross’ 2. Ex. 25
– – ‘Discovery’ 2. Ex. 25
– – ‘Golden Delicious’ 29. Ex. 6
– – ‘James Grieve’ 2. Ex. 22, 2. Ex. 25, 21. Ex. 4
– – ‘M9’ 2. Ex. 22
– – ‘Mullins’s Yellow Seedling’ 29. Ex. 6
– – ‘Star Lady’ 28. Ex. 4
– *floribunda* ‘Arnoldiana’ 21. Ex. 16
Mespilus 24. Ex. 1, 2, 27. Ex. 2
– *germanica* 2. Ex. 7, 24. Ex. 3, 24. Ex. 5
Milium effusum ‘Aureum’ 2. Ex. 8
Miltonia Div. III. Ex. 5
Monarda ‘Marshall’s Delight’ (“Marshalls Delight”) 35. Ex. 17

Narcissus Div. V. Ex. 3
– ‘Alnwick Beauty’ 28. Ex. 2
– ‘Amy Johnson’ 21. Ex. 48
– ‘Commander-in-Chief’ (“Commander in Chief”) 35. Ex. 11, 13
– ‘Davis Daff’ 21. Ex. 33
– ‘Golden Harvest’ 21. Ex. 4
– ‘Granny’s Daffodil’ 21. Ex. 33
– ‘Miss Amy Johnson’ 21. Ex. 48
Nelumbo 21. Ex. 38
– *nucifera* 21. Ex. 38
– ‘Ōga’ 21. Ex. 38
– ‘Ōga-Hasu’ 21. Ex. 38
Neofinetia
– *falcata* 3. Ex. 9
– – Hariba Group 3. Ex. 9
– – Mameba Group 3. Ex. 9
– – Shiro-fukurin Group 3. Ex. 9
– – Tora-fu Group 3. Ex. 9
– ‘Ōnami-seikai’ 34. Ex. 7
Nerium ‘Professeur Durand’ (‘Prof. Durand’) 35. Ex. 9
Nymphaea
– ‘Dr Florence’ (‘Docteur Florence’) 35. Ex. 9
– ‘Gloire du Temple-sur-Lot’ 35. Ex. 13

oak ATTENTION! 13. Ex. 3
Odontoglossum Div. III. Ex. 5, 6
Oncidium Div. III. Ex. 5, 6
onion
– ‘NuMex Arthur’ 21. Ex. 25
– ‘NuMex Crimson’ 21. Ex. 25

– ‘NuMex Freedom’ 21. Ex. 25
– ‘NuMex Solano’ 21. Ex. 25
Osteospermum ‘Hopleys’ (“Hopley’s”) 35. Ex. 17

Paeonia
– ‘Kokuryū-nishiki’ 34. Ex. 6
– ‘Sussex Peony’ 21. Ex. 33
Paphiopedilum
– Atlantis grex 4. Ex. 1
– Greenteaicecreamandraspberries grex 23. Ex. 1
– Lucifer grex 4. Ex. 1
– Sorel 16. Ex. 2
– Sorel grex 4. Ex. 1, 8. Ex. 4, 16. Ex. 2
Pelargonium
– ‘Chi-Chi’ 35. Ex. 13
– ‘Freak of Nature’ 2. Ex. 6
Pernettya 6. Ex. 3
Persicaria affinis ‘Donald Lowndes’ (“Lowndes’s Variety”) 21. Ex. 29
Phalaenopsis Div. III. Ex. 6
Phaseolus vulgaris ‘Contender’ 2. Ex. 12
Philadelphus ‘Debureaux’ (“Deberoux”) 35. Ex. 3
× *Philageria* Div. III. Ex. 9
Philesia Div. III. Ex. 9
Phlox
– ‘Excellent’ 21. Ex. 52
– *paniculata* ‘Kirchenfuerst’ (“Kirchenfürst”) 35. Ex. 6
– ‘Phlox of Sheep’ 21. Ex. 33
Picea
– *abies* 2. Ex. 4
– – ‘Little Gem’ 2. Ex. 4
– – ‘Nidiformis’ 2. Ex. 4
– – provenance Gortel-1 2. Ex. 11
– *pungens* ‘J. James’ (“Jesse James”) 35. Ex. 10
Pinus
– *sylvestris*
– – ‘Hexguld’ (“Häxguld”) 35. Ex. 4
– – cv. ‘Repens’ 14. Ex. 2
– – ‘Repens’ 14. Ex. 2
– – *repens* 14. Ex. 2
– – var. Repens 14. Ex. 2
Pisum ‘Consort’ 21. Ex. 3
Pittosporum
– ‘Garnettii’ 2. Ex. 17
– ‘John Flanagan’ 2. Ex. 17
– ‘Margaret Turnbull’ 2. Ex. 17
Pleione
– Confirmation grex 23. Ex. 2, 23. Ex. 3
– × *lagenaria* 23. Ex. 2, 23. Ex. 3
– Lassen Peak grex 23. Ex. 2
– Liz Shan grex 23. Ex. 2
– *maculata* 23. Ex. 2, 23. Ex. 3
– *praecox* 23. Ex. 2, 23. Ex. 3
Poa pratensis ‘Baron’ 2. Ex. 16
poire ‘Doyenné du Comice’ 21. Ex. 4
Polypodium vulgare ‘Bifidocristatum’ 35. Ex. 19
Polypogon Div. III. Ex. 2
potato
– ‘Cara’ 21. Ex. 4
– ‘Red Craigs Royal’ 2. Ex. 6
– ‘Sharpe’s Express’ 21. Ex. 2
Potentilla ‘Davidson’s Red’ 21. Ex. 68
Primula
– Border Auricula Group 3. Ex. 1
– *denticulata*
– – ‘Cachmeriana’ 21. Ex. 10
– – var. *cachmeriana* 21. Ex. 10
– ‘MacWatt’s Blue’ 3. Ex. 1
– ‘Old Irish Scented’ 3. Ex. 1
– ‘Osborne Green’ 3. Ex. 1
Prunus
– ‘Ama-no-gawa’ 34. Ex. 6
– ‘Beni-chidori’ 35. Ex. 14
– ‘Chôshû-hizakura’, 34. Ex. 8
– ‘Chōshū-hizakura’ 34. Ex. 7, 8
– *domestica*
– – ‘Apricot’ 21. Ex. 41
– – ‘Peach’ 21. Ex. 41
– ‘Hakusan-hata-zakura’, ‘Hakusan Hata Zakura’ 35. Ex. 12
– ‘Hikaru Genji’ 21. Ex. 8
– ‘Kojō-no-mai’ 34. Ex. 7
– *mume* 34. Ex. 3
– – ‘Hongyan Gongfen’ 35. Ex. 3
– – ‘Xuehai Gongfen’ 34. Ex. 3
– – ‘Yanhong Zhaoshui’ 34. Ex. 3
– – ‘Zao Yudie’ 34. Ex. 3
– ‘Sato-zakura’ 21. Ex. 35
– ‘Taki-nioi’ 34. Ex. 6
× *Pseudadenia* Div. III. Ex. 4
Pseudorchis Div. III. Ex. 4
‘Puzol’ pepino 21. Ex. 4

Pyrus
– *bretschneideri* 'Ya Li' 21. Ex. 36
– *communis* 'Merton Pride' 2. Ex. 23
– 'Doyenné du Comice' 21. Ex. 4

Quercus
– ATTENTION! oak 13. Ex. 3
– *frainetto* 20. Ex. 2
– – 'Hungarian Crown' 20. Ex. 2
– *robur*
– – 'Concordia' 31. Ex. 10
– – 'Golden' 31. Ex. 10
– – 'Wandell' 13. Ex. 3

Ranunculus
– 'Brazen Hussy' 22. Ex. 9
– *ficaria* Brazen Hussy Group 22. Ex. 9
× *Renades* Arunoday grex 4. Ex. 3
Renanthera Div. III. Ex. 8
– *imschootiana* 4. Ex. 3
Retinospora squarrosa 29. Ex. 4
× *Rhaphiobotrya* Div. III. Ex. 2
Rhaphiolepis Div. III. Ex. 2
Rhododendron 21. Ex. 18
– 'Albatross' 22. Ex. 7
– 'Ambrosius Superbus' ("Ambrosius Superbum") 21. Ex. 18
– *boothii* 3. Ex. 4
– – Mishmiense Group 3. Ex. 4
– 'Calypso' 21. Ex. 39
– *facetum* 22. Ex. 7
– Jacqueline Group 22. Ex. 7
– Jacqueline-Gruppen 15. Ex. 1
– 'Ladies' White' 21. Ex. 49
– 'Lady White' 21. Ex. 49
– 'Madonna' (Brooks) 30. Ex. 2
– 'Madonna' (Gable) 30. Ex. 2
– 'Maurice Daffarn' Div. V. Ex. 6
– *mishmiense* 3. Ex. 4
– 'Nancy Stipa' 21. Ex. 42
– Northern Lights Group 35. Ex. 13
– 'Rhododendron Mad' 21. Ex. 33
– 'Sherbrooke' ("Sherbrook") 35. Ex. 2
– 'Terracotta' ("Terra-Cotta") 35. Ex. 18
– 'Tri-Lights' 35. Ex. 13
× *Rhynchosophrocattleya*
– Marie Lemon Stick grex Francis Suzuki Group 16. Ex. 3
– Marie Lemon Stick gx Francis Suzuki Gp 16. Ex. 3
Rhynchostylis Div. III. Ex. 1, 6
× *Rodrettiopsis* Div. III. Ex. 6
Rodriguezia Div. III. Ex. 6
Rosa
– *carolina* 'Indabes' 2. Ex. 10
– PEACE ('Madame A. Meilland') 17. Ex. 2
– Polyantha Group 22. Ex. 1
– 'Pompon de Paris' 21. Ex. 8
rose
– 'Ausburton' (Ausburton) 31. Ex. 1
– 'Harwestsun' 21. Ex. 27
– 'Harwex' 21. Ex. 27
– 'Harwharry' 21. Ex. 27
– 'Harwicklow' 21. Ex. 27
– 'Korlanum' 13. Ex. 1
– SOMMERWIND ('Korlanum') 13. Ex. 1
– SURREY ('Korlanum') 13. Ex. 1
– VENT D'ÉTÉ ('Korlanum') 13. Ex. 1
"Rose Sommerwind" 13. Ex. 1
"rose Surrey" 13. Ex. 1
"rose Vent d'Été" 13. Ex. 1
rose trémière Groupe Chater's Double 8. Ex. 2

Salix
– *alba* 'Lievelde' 2. Ex. 1
– *matsudana* 'Tortuosa' 2. Ex. 1
Salvia officinalis 'Tricolor' 2. Ex. 6
Saxifraga fortunei 'Akane-Fuji' 21. Ex. 8, 35. Ex. 14
schroeforchis Awful grex 8. Ex. 3
Scilla
– *campanulata* 'Rose Queen' 21. Ex. 9
– *hispanica*
– – var. *campanulata* 'Rose Queen' 21. Ex. 9
– – 'Rose Queen' 21. Ex. 9
Secale Div. III. Ex. 10
Selenicereus Div. III. Ex. 2
× *Seleniphyllum* Div. III. Ex. 2
Senecio 3. Ex. 7
Silene
– *flos-jovis* 21. Ex. 40
– 'Jupiterbloem' 21. Ex. 40
snowdrop
– 'John Gray' 21. Ex. 1
– 'Snowflake' 21. Ex. 39

'Snowflake' snowdrop 21. Ex. 39
Solanum 6. Ex. 4
– *aethiopicum* Gilo Group 22. Ex. 2
– *muricatum* 'Puzol' 21. Ex. 4
– *nigrum* 1. Ex. 1
– *physalifolium* 1. Ex. 1
– × *procurrens* 1. Ex. 1
– 'Sharpe's Express' 21. Ex. 2
– *tuberosum*
– – 'Cara' 21. Ex. 4
– – 'Desiree' 3. Ex. 10
– – Maincrop Group 3. Ex. 11
– – (Maincrop Group) 'Desiree' 3. Ex. 10
– – Maincrop Red-skinned Group 3. Ex. 11
– – Red-skinned Group 3. Ex. 11
– – (Red-skinned Group) 'Desiree' 3. Ex. 10
– – 'Sharpe's Express' 21. Ex. 2
– – 'Wilja' 2. Ex. 1
× *Sophrolaeliocattleya* Div. III. Ex. 6
Sophronitis Div. III. Ex. 6
Sorghum bicolor 'Texas 610' 2. Ex. 14
Spiraea
– *cantoniensis* 21. Ex. 11
– – f. *lanceata* 21. Ex. 11
– – 'Lanceata' 21. Ex. 11
– *japonica* 'Anthony Waterer' 2. Ex. 6
Spiranthes Awful grex 8. Ex. 3
Stanhopea wardii 31. Ex. 7
Stockrose 'Chater's Doppelte Gruppe' 8. Ex. 2
stokroos 'Chater's Dubbele Groep 8. Ex. 2
strawberry 'Cambridge Favourite' 8. Ex. 1
Styrax
– "Benibana Ego-no-ki" 31. Ex. 9
– *japonica* 31. Ex. 9
– – 'Benibana' 31. Ex. 9
– – 'Pink Chimes' 31. Ex. 9
Syringa 18. Ex. 1
– 'Charisma' 2. Ex. 5
– × *chinensis* 2. Ex. 7, 14. Ex. 3, 24. Ex. 1
– 'Correlata' ("+ Correlata") 2. Ex. 7, 14. Ex. 3
– × *hyacinthiflora* 'La Cañada' ("La Canada") 35. Ex. 7
– 'Royalty' 2. Ex. 5
– *vulgaris* 2. Ex. 7, 14. Ex. 3, 24. Ex. 1
– – 'Andenken an Ludwig Späth' 2. Ex. 1, 13. Ex. 2
– – LUDWIG SPAETH 13. Ex. 2
– – Veberöd 2. Ex. 11

Thrixspermum
– *amplexicaule* 27. Ex. 1
– Eric Holttum grex 27. Ex. 1
– *scopa* 27. Ex. 1
Tricyrtis 'Tōgen' 34. Ex. 6
Trifolium repens 'Star' 2. Ex. 13
Tripsacum dactyloides 2. Ex. 16
× *Triticale* Div. III. Ex. 10
× *Triticosecale* Div. III. Ex. 10
– 'Siskiyou' 21. Ex. 3
Triticum Div. III. Ex. 7, 10
– *aestivum* 'Marquis' 2. Ex. 12
× *Tritordeum* Div. III. Ex. 7
Tulipa
– 'Apeldoorn' 2. Ex. 1
– Breeders Group 3. Ex. 12
– Dutch Breeders Group 3. Ex. 12
– English Breeders Group 3. Ex. 12
– Grupo Darwin 15. Ex. 1
– 'Liberty' [Krelage, pre-1926] 30. Ex. 1
– 'Liberty' [Vooren, 1988] 30. Ex. 1

Vanda Div. III. Ex. 1, 6, 8
× *Vascostylis* Div. III. Ex. 1, 6
Verbena hastata 'Rosea' 2. Ex. 8
Veronica
– "*Sutherlandii*" 21. Ex. 12
– *virginica* 'Alba' 21. Ex. 17
'Veronica' ash 21. Ex. 39
Veronicastrum 21. Ex. 17
– *virginicum* 'Album' 21. Ex. 17
Viburnum
– × *bodnantense* 21. Ex. 60
– – 'Dawn' 21. Ex. 60
– *farreri* 21. Ex. 60
– *grandiflorum* 21. Ex. 60
– *opulus* 'Xanthocarpum' 2. Ex. 9
Vicia
– *faba*
– – Elatae Group 22. Ex. 2
– – 'Longest Possible' 21. Ex. 51
Victoria
– 'Adventure' 1. Ex. 4
– *amazonica* 1. Ex. 4
– *cruziana* 1. Ex. 4
– 'Longwood Hybrid' 1. Ex. 4
'Victoria' *Dianthus* 21. Ex. 39

Vinca major ‘Variegata’ 2. Ex. 6
Viola ‘Penny Black’ 2. Ex. 8

Weigela
– *floribunda*
– – *foliis purpureis* 21. Ex. 13
– – ‘Foliis Purpureis’ 21. Ex. 13
wheat ‘AC Avonlea’ 21. Ex. 26
‘William Sim’ carnation 21. Ex. 4
× *Wilsonara* Div. III. Ex. 6

yarrow ‘Cerise Queen’ 21. Ex. 2

Zea
– *mays* 2. Ex. 16
– – ‘Wisconsin 153’ 2. Ex. 12

Subject Index

The references in this index are not to pages, but to the Articles, through the Rules and Recommendations, etc., of the *Code* as follows: Div. = Division; Pre. = Preamble; Prin = Principle; Arabic numerals = Rules or, when followed by a letter, Recommendations; Ex. = Example; Nt. = Notes; fn - footnotes. The various Appendices are not here indexed.

Abbreviation
– acronym 35B.1
– author 28A.1
– blend 35B.1
– contraction of word 35B.1
– cv. 14.1, 14. Nt. 2
– definitions of different kinds 35B.1
– doctor 35. Ex. 20
– forms of address 35.9
– Gp 15.2
– gx 16.1
– initialism 35B.1
– MCC (Marylebone Cricket Club) 35. Ex. 21
– mister 35. Ex.20
– NASA (National Aeronautical and Space Agency) 35. Ex. 21
– "No" (number) 35.8
– of or in epithets 35.9
– of organization, name in conflict with 31.3
– professor 35. Ex. 20
– prohibited 35.9
– saint 35. Ex. 20
– superseded, use of on plant labels 14. Nt. 2
– use of period (full stop) 35B.1
– USS (United Star Ship) 35. Ex. 21
– var. 14.1
Aberrant growth 2.9
Absence of Rule Pre. 9
Accent
– addition of 35.6
– retention of 35.4
Accepted name 11
– and trade designation Prin. 6, 13.1, 17.2
– becomes synonym when rejected or replaced 11.3
– choice of 29.1–3
– definition 11.1
– designation by ICRA where widely used 11.6
– Groups with more than one 11.5
– in statutory register 11.4
– objection when designated 11.9
– only one may be borne Prin. 3
– proposal to accept when contrary to *Code* 11.7
– when statutory protection lapses 11.4
Accuracy in naming Prin. 1
Acronym see Abbreviation
Addition sign
– before cultivar epithet 14.2
– in graft-chimaeric formula 24.2, 24.3
Adjective, to agree in gender 21.8–21.10
Adopted name 11.2, Div. IV. 4
– cited with trade designations 17.2
– cited with trademark 8. Nt. 1
– definition 11.3
– in statutory register 11.4
Adult cutting material 2. Ex. 3
Africa, as an epithet 21. Ex. 23
Agamospermous reproduction 2.18
Agreement, in epithets in Latin form 21.8–21.10
Agriculture Pre. 1
ALA-LC Romanization Tables 33. Nt. 2, 33. Ex. 1, 33A.1, 34D.1
Algae Pre. 7, Prin. 2
Alps Otome, not Arupusu Otome 34. Ex. 1
Apostrophe
– denoting cultivar status 14. Nt. 1
– erroneous use 35.14
– German 35. Ex. 16
– permitted in epithet 21.18

– possessive noun 35.13
Application of names made clear through nomenclatural standards Prin. 9
–*ara* suffix Div. III. 5–7, 9
Arabic numerals, in cultivar epithet 21.15
Articles, definite and indefinite 21.3
Aurora Borealis, as an epithet 21. Ex. 20
Author
– abbreviation 28A.1
– citation 28
– – in accordance with *ICN* 28A.1
– – not necessary 28.1
– – where epithet reclassified 29.4
– graft-chimaeric genus 28.6
– in descriptions 27B.1
– name
– – not accepted by 27.6
– – established by ICRA on behalf of registrant 28.4
– – established by statutory plant registration authority 28.5
– position in name 28.2
– verifying material for standard Div. V. 13
– where epithet translated, transliterated or transcribed 28.3
Availability of names for use Prin. 4, 6

Backcrosses, in grexes 23. Nt. 1
Backslash, use in epithet 21.18
Bicolor, as an epithet 21. Ex. 20
Blend, definition 35B.1
Bognor Regis, as an epithet 21. Ex. 23
Bonsai plants, names of 2. Ex. 27
Botanic gardens, use of historic abbreviations by 14. Nt. 2
Brackets
– round
– – distinguishing information added in 30. Ex. 2
– – grex epithet in 16.2
– – Group epithet in, before cultivar 15.3
– square
– – distinguishing information added in 30. Ex. 1
– – in Chinese trade designations 17. Ex. 2
Branch sports 2. Ex. 17
Breeder
– details in publication of new cultivar, Group or grex name 27D.1, 27D.2
– false impression as to 21J.1
– identifying codes in roses 21. Ex. 27
– name contrary to wishes of 31.4
– numbers 21. Nt. 4
– rights see Plant Breeders' Rights
– when verifying material for standard Div. V. 13
Breeding material, no longer in existence 30.2

Campus, as an epithet 21. Ex. 20
Capital letter(s)
– cultivar epithet 21.3
– grex epithet 23.2
– Group epithet 22.3
Categories within this *Code* 2.1 fn
Caveat emptor, as an epithet 21. Ex. 21
Changes to names, proper reasons for Pre. 8
Characters (of plants)
– defining a cultivar 2.4
– derived from intracellular organism 2.10
– distinctness 2.3
– misleading impression of 21H.1
– retention of 2.3
– – in F_1 hybrids 2.18
– selection for 2.3
– similarity as basis for Group 3.1
– stability 2.3
– uniformity 2.3
– variable within circumscription Div. V. 3
– worth distinguishing with cultivar or Group name 20.2
Characters (printed)
– Chinese 34B.1
– Japanese 34D.1, 34D.2
– Korean 34C.1
– numerals 21.15
– non-Roman, establishment of names in 27F.1, 27F.2
– prohibited 21.15, 21.18, 21.19
– symbols 21.19
Chimaera (see also Graft-chimaera, Mutation-chimaera) 5

Chinese
– books 25.2
– equivalent of "cultivar" in 2. Nt. 2
– epithets identical to Japanese 21. Ex. 50
– hand-copied books 25.2
– ideographic characters 34B.1
– trade designations 17. Ex. 2
– transcription from 34B.1
Choice of name 29
Cicero, as an epithet 21. Ex. 22
Circumflex, in Japanese transcriptions 34D.2
Claudia, Claudius, as epithets 21. Ex. 22
Clone
– cytophysic 2.8
– definition 2.6
– derived from aberrant growth 2.9
– may form a cultivar 2.6
– tetraploid 2. Ex. 15
– topophysic 2.7
– variable characteristics Div. V. Nt. 3
Code
– aims Pre. 1, Prin. 1
– Articles Pre. 3
– endorsement Prin. 10
– Examples Pre. 3
– force derives from free assent Prin. 10
– modification Div. VI
– Notes Pre. 3
– previous editions superseded Pre. 12
– Principles Pre. 2
– provisions retroactive Prin. 11
– Recommendations Pre. 5
– regulating terminology Prin. 5
– rejection under earlier editions 31.5
– relationship to *ICN* 1
– Rules Pre. 3
– scope Prin. 2
– translation of 2.2
Code names, as cultivar epithets 21.25
Collectors' numbers 21. Nt. 4
Colour chart Div. V. 10
– edition specified in standard portfolio Div. V. Nt. 11
Colour print, as nomenclatural standard Div. V. Ex. 4
Comma, use in epithet 21.18
Common name
– denomination class 21.22
– genus 21.2, 21.22
– Japanese, transcribed 21.21
– not regulated by this *Code* Prin. 7
– species 21.22
– unambiguous 21.1, 21.2
Common phrases, in Latin form 21.12
Competing names 11.8, 29.2
– in Latin form 29.1
Condensed formula Div. III. 2–6, 8, 9, 11
Conjunctions, in cultivar epithet 21.3
Connecting vowel 24.3, Div. III. 4, 6
Conserved name(s) 11.7, 12, 19
– application to conserve 19.1–3
– basis for proposal 19.2
– date effective 19.3
– definition 12.1
– objection to proposal 11.9
– publication of decision 19.3
Contraction (of word) 35B.1
Contrary to *Code*
– changing a name Pre. 8
– conserved name 12.1
– name accepted by ICRA when 19.1
– proposal to accept name when 11.7
– registration when Div. IV. 4
– rejection of names 31.1
– widely used name 11.6, 11.7
Copyright in images Div. V. Nt. 5
Corpus Christi, as an epithet 21. Ex. 20
Corrections to spelling
– basis for 35.2
– definition of correct spelling
– – epithets in Latin form 35.1
– – epithets in non-Latin form 35.2
– effect on date of name 9.2
– to be made with reserve 35A.1
– unintentional mistakes 35.3
– use of apostrophe 35.14
– use of hyphen 35.11, 35.14, 35. Nt. 1
Covariant, definition 2.23
Cultigen Prin. 2 fn
Cultivar (see also Cultivar epithets and names, Cultivar epithet examples). 2
– assigned to more than one Group 3.4
– basic category of this *Code* 2.1
– breeder details 27D.1, Div. V. 13
– characters
– – changing through change in propagation method 2.21

– – variable Div. V. Nt. 3
– circumscription Div. V. Nt. 3
– clonal 2.6
– – cyclophysic 2.8
– – topophysic 2.7
– definition 2.3
– deriving from
– – aberrant growth 2.9
– – adult or juvenile cutting material 2. Ex. 3
– – chimaera 2.11
– – intracellular organism 2.10, 2. Ex. 5
– designation of taxa no longer recognized as species under *ICN* 2.4
– different modes of propagation 2.5
– genetically modified plants 2.19, 2. Nt. 6
– equivalents in other languages 2. Nt. 2, 2. Nt. 3
– *forma*, relation to 2. Nt. 1
– indication of status 14.1
– indistinguishable from another 2.20
– introducer 27D.1, Div. V. 13
– judgement of merit or distinctness by ICRA Div. IV. 5
– line 2.14
– multiline 2.15
– nominant 27D.1, Div. V. 13
– origins irrelevant 2.20
– parentage 27D.1
– raiser 27D.1, Div. V. 13
– status 14
– *varietas*, relation to 2. Nt. 1
– where only one individual exists 2. Nt. 5
Cultivar epithets and names (see also Cultivar epithet examples) 21
– abbreviation 35.9
– acceptance of Div. IV. 1
– accepted name 11.1
– – rejection 11.3
– – replacement 11.3
– application
– – made precise by raiser and date details 30.5
– – to more than one cultivar 30.5
– – when name of higher taxon changes 21.4
– author 28, Div. V. 13
– – citation 28.2
– characteristics
– – length 21.13, 21D.1
– – – when Romanized 21L.1
– – misleading 21.24, 21H.1
– – offensiveness 21K.1, 31.8
– – pronounceability 21D.1
– competing names 29.2
– components (characters)
– – Arabic numerals 21.15
– – consisting of single letter 21.15
– – fractions 21.19
– – prohibited characters 21.15, 21.18, 21.19
– – punctuation marks 21.15, 21.18
– – Roman numerals 21.15
– – symbols 21.19
– components (words)
– – adjectival words solely 21G.1
– – code name 21.25
– – common name of species 21.22
– – common name of denomination class 21.22
– – common name of genus 21.20, 21.22
– – descriptive words solely 21G.1
– – epithet of taxon no longer recognized 29.4
– – epithet of species within same genus 21M.1
– – genus name 21.20–22
– – name of living person 21E.1
– – novel invention 21.14
– – prohibited words 21.16, 21.17, 21.20
– confusion 29.3
– – epithets differing by one character 21. Nt. 3
– – similarity in pronunciation 21.23
– – similarity in written form 21.23
– – similarity when Romanized 21.23
– – terms in market place 21F.1
– – with Group epithet 22A.1
– conserved 12.1
– contrary to wishes of raiser or breeder 31.4
– correcting See Corrections to spelling
– date 9.1
– definition of cultivar name 8.1, 21.1
– denomination class, new epithet required if already in use in 21.4
– derivation
– – false impression 21I.1

– – when correcting name 35.14
– – when publishing new name 27D.1
– different lineages, distinguishing 21N.1
– duplication 6
– – in denomination class 31.6
– – in Latin 31.6
– establishment 18.1, 27.1, 27.5, 27. Nt. 1, 27A.1
– – ensured by registration Div. IV. 2
– exaggeration 21.24
– graft-chimaeric (definition) 24.4
– languages permitted 21.11
– Latin form 21.5–21.12
– – agreement in epithets in Latin form 21.8–10
– – duplicating final Latin epithet of taxon 21B.1
– – entirely in Latin 21.11
– – repeated within denomination class 21.7
– – retention of Latin epithet as cultivar epithet 21.5, 21.6, 35.1
– – spelling where published under *ICN* 32. Nt. 2
– – words current in other languages 21.12
– minimum requirement 21.2
– nationally important, as trade designation 13. Nt. 2
– nomenclatural standard Div. V. 1
– nomenclature governed by this *Code* Prin. 2
– non-Latin form 21.11–21.14
– non-Roman scripts 27F.1, 27F.2
– presentation with higher taxa
– – appearing alone 21. Nt. 1
– – appearing with grex (in orchids) 6.5
– – appearing with species (in orchids) 6.5
– – taxon assigned to accompany 21A.1
– prohibitions 21.15–21.24
– publication
– – category, name and circumscription 9. Nt. 1
– – history 27D.1
– – in ephemeral material 25A.1
– registration Prin. 8, Div. IV
– rejection 31.1
– relation to this *Code* and *ICN* 1.2, 1A.1
– re-use of epithets 30
– rootstock, naming of 2.22
– spelling See Corrections to spelling
– starting point for 18.1
– statutory rules, formation under 11. Nt. 1
– styling 8.2, 8. Ex. 1
– – italics 8A.1
– – multiplication sign 14.3
– – quote marks 14.1
– – typography 8.A.1
– – use of initial capital 21.3
– trade designation, used as 13. Nt. 1, 13. Nt. 2
– trademarks recorded by Registrar Div. IV. 6
– transcription 32.1, 34.1, 35. Nt. 1
– translation to be regarded as trade designation 32. Nt. 1
– transliteration 32.1, 33.1
– – rendered between alphabetic scripts 33.1
– – where taxon reclassified 21.5
– wild plants brought into cultivation 20.2
Cultivar epithet examples
– ‘$Million’ 21. Ex. 32
– ‘½ Empty’ 21. Ex. 32
– ‘10 Downing Street’ 21. Ex. 28
– ‘100%’ 21. Ex. 32
– ‘123-abcd4’, ‘123/ABCD4’, ‘12AB34CD’, ‘12-AB 34 CD 1’, ‘1A2B/33’ 21. Ex. 53
– ‘21!’ 21. Ex. 28
– ‘400’ 21. Ex. 28
– ‘461 Ocean Boulevard’ 21. Ex. 28
– ‘4th July’ 21. Ex. 28
– ‘77 Sunset Strip’ 21. Ex. 28
– ‘Abc1234de’ 21. Ex. 53
– ‘Africa’ 21. Ex. 23
– ‘Alps Otome’ 34. Ex. 1
– ‘Apollo 13’ 21. Ex. 28
– ‘Arupusu Otome’ 34. Ex. 1
– ‘Aurea Bennett’ 21. Ex. 19
– ‘Aurora Borealis’ 21. Ex. 20
– ‘Beryl, Viscountess Cowdray’ 21. Ex. 30
– ‘Bicolor’ 21. Ex. 20
– ‘Blanche’ 21. Ex. 65
– ‘Bognor Regis’ 21. Ex. 23
– ‘Bonsai’ 21. Ex. 64
– ‘Campus’ 21. Ex. 20

– ‘Catch 22’ 21. Ex. 28
– “Caveat Emptor” 21. Ex. 21
– ‘Chloë’ 35. Ex. 5
– ‘Cicero’ 21. Ex. 22
– ‘Claudia’ 21. Ex. 22
– ‘Claudius’ 21. Ex. 22
– ‘Container Grown’ 21. Ex. 64
– ‘Corpus Christi’ 21. Ex. 20
– ‘Diplomgartenbauinspektor’ 21. Ex. 63
– ‘Double Red’ 21. Ex. 65
– ‘E.A. Bowles’ 21. Ex. 30
– ‘ENT/100’ 21. Ex. 30
– ‘Go-go Dancer’ 21. Ex. 30
– ‘Gordianus’ 21. Ex. 22
– ‘Habeas Corpus’ 21. Ex. 20
– ‘Half Empty’ 21. Ex. 32
– ‘Happy 21st Birthday’ 21. Ex. 28
– ‘Happy@home.com’ 21. Ex. 32
– ‘Help!!!’ 21. Ex. 30
– ‘Henry VIII’ 21. Ex. 28
– ‘Hundred’ 21. Ex. 28
– ‘IJsselham’ 21. Ex. 7
– ‘India’ 21. Ex. 23
– ‘Jeanne d’Arc’ 21. Ex. 30
– ‘Julia’ 21. Ex. 22
– ‘Julius Caesar’ 21. Ex. 22
– ‘K’ 21. Ex. 28
– ‘Large’ 21. Ex. 65
– ‘Large White’ 21. Ex. 65
– ‘Loderi Red’ 21. Ex. 19
– ‘Londinium’ 21. Ex. 23
– ‘M9’ 21. Ex. 28, 21. Ex. 54
– ‘M16’, ‘M25’, M26’, ‘M27’ 21. Ex. 54
– ‘Madame la Comtesse Oswald de Kerchove de Denterghem’ 21. Ex. 24
– ‘Major’ 21. Ex. 20
– ‘Marston Magna’ 21. Ex. 23
– ‘MCC’ 35. Ex. 21
– ‘Million Dollars’ 21. Ex. 32, 21. Ex. 64
– ‘Minor’ 21. Ex. 20
– ‘MMIV’ 21. Ex. 28
– ‘Mons’ 21. Ex. 23
– ‘Museum’ 21. Ex. 20
– ‘Nani Baker’ 21. Ex. 19
– ‘NASA’ 35. Ex. 21
– ‘Nil Desperandum’ 21. Ex. 21
– ‘Noli me Tangere’ 21. Ex. 21
– ‘Non Sequitur’ 21. Ex. 21
– ‘Nova Scotia’ 21. Ex. 23
– ‘N!xau’ 21. Ex. 31
– ‘Ōgon’ 21. Ex. 65
– ‘Oh Boy!’ 21. Ex. 30
– ‘Owen Glendower’, ‘Owain Glyndwr’ 32. Ex. 2
– ‘Paulus’ 21. Ex. 22
– ‘Peninsula’ 21. Ex. 20
– ‘Poisonous’ 21. Ex. 64
– ‘Pope Leo X’ 21. Ex. 28
– ‘Post Paid’ 21. Ex. 64
– ‘Saint-Louis-du-Ha! Ha!’ 21. Ex. 30
– ‘Sambuca®’ 21. Ex. 32
– ‘Simon Who??’ 21. Ex. 30
– ‘Sing, Sing, Sing’ 21. Ex. 30
– ‘Susannah’ if ‘Susanna’ or ‘Susanne’ exist 21. Ex. 45
– ‘Tax Free’ 21. Ex. 64
– ‘Ten Dollars’ 21. Ex. 64
– ‘Two Litres’ 21. Ex. 64
– ‘Two Plus Two’ 21. Ex. 32
– ‘Two+Two’ 21. Ex. 32
– ‘U!’ 21. Ex. 28
– ‘USS Enterprise’ 35. Ex. 21
– ‘Variegated’ 21. Ex. 65
– ‘Washington Bullatus’ 21. Ex. 19
– ‘Westward Ho!’ 21. Ex. 30
– ‘Wham! Blam!’ 21. Ex. 30
– ‘Zoë’ 35. Ex. 5
Cultivated Plant Code Prin. 1
Cultivated plants
– definition Pre. 1
– names in accordance with this *Code* 1A.1
– stable method of naming Pre. 1
Cumberland and Westmorland Group 22. Ex. 4
Cyclophysic clone
– definition 2.8
– may form cultivar 2.8

Date of name 9
– as distinguishing device 30.5
– correcting spelling, effect of on 9.2
– definition 9.1
– Plant Breeders’ Rights 27. Nt. 2
– where epithet translated, transliterated or transcribed 28.3
Date of publication 26
– condition of establishment 27.1

– definition 26.2
– evidence of 26.2, 26.4
– spanning more than one year 26.3
Definitions Div. II. Chap. II
– accepted name 11.1
– acronym 35B.1
– adopted name 11.3
– blend 35B.1
– clone 2.6
– conserved name 12.1
– contraction 35B.1
– correct spelling 35.1, 35.2
– covariant 2.23
– cultivar 2.3
– cultivar name 8.1, 21.1
– cultivated plant Pre. 1
– cyclophysic clone 2.8
– date of name 9.1
– date of publication 26.2
– denomination class 6.1, 6.2
– – defined by statutory authorities 6. Nt. 1
– description 27.2
– establishment 10.1
– F_1 hybrid 2.16
– graft-chimaera 2.11, 5.1
– graft-chimaeric name 24.4
– grex 4.1
– grex name 8.1, 23.1
– Group 3.1
– Group name 8.1, 22.1
– indelible autograph 25. Nt. 2
– initialism 35B.1
– International Cultivar Registration Authority (ICRA) Div. IV. 2
– line 2.14
– multiline 2.15
– mutation-chimaera 5.2
– nomen nudum 21. Ex. 12
– nomenclatural standard Div. V. 1
– printed material 25. Nt. 1
– publication 7.1, 25.1
– registrant Div. IV. 8
– registrar Div. IV. 7
– registration Div. IV. 1
– statutory plant registration authority Div. IV. 3
– synonym 11.2
– taxon Pre. 1
– topophysic clone 2.7
– topovariant 2.13
– trade designation 13.1
Denomination class 6
– announcement 6.3
– changes to limits 6.3
– common name as cultivar epithet 21.22
– defined by statutory authorities 6. Nt. 1
– definition 6.1, 6.2
– divided 6.3, 6.4
– epithets in Latin form 21.7
– genus 6.2
– hybrid genus 6.2
– in orchids 6.5
– permitted re-use in 6.1
– similar epithets within 21.23
– special 6.2, 6.4
– starting points in 18.1
– statutory plant registration authorities 6. Nt. 1
– united 6.3, 6.4
– where name of higher taxon changes 21.4
Description
– accompanied by illustration 27C.1
– as condition of establishment 27.1
– definition 27.2
– differences clearly set out 27A.1
– hybrid genera Div. III. 10
– name published without description 21. Nt. 2
– nomen nudum 21. Ex. 12
– reference to previously published 27B.1
Designation of taxa no longer recognized as species under *ICN* as cultivar 2.4
Diacritical mark
– addition of 35.6
– in Japanese transcriptions 34D.2
– retention of 35.4
Diaeresis
– adding 35.6
– omitting 35.5
Digital image Div. V. 3
– printed from file, as nomenclatural standard Div. V. Nt. 6
Disputed names 19.1
Distinct characters 2.3
– worth distinguishing with cultivar or Group name 20.2

Distinguishability, irrelevance of origins to 2.20
Distribution, of printed copies where publication electronic 25. Nt. 3, 25C.1, 25C.2
Doctor, abbreviation of 35. Ex. 20
Double quotation marks 14.1
Duplication
– avoided through use of nomenclatural standards Prin. 9
– cultivar, Group or grex epithets 6
– cultivar names in Latin 31.6
– in denomination class 31.6
– permitted 6.1
Duplicated material, publication by 25.1
Dutch, equivalent of "cultivar" in 2. Nt. 2
Dwarfing effect of rootstock 2. Ex. 22, 2. Ex. 23

Earliest name 11.1
– in Latin form 29.1
Electronic media, publication by 25. Nt. 3, 25C.1, 25C.2, 26. Nt. 1
Electronic presentation of names Pre. 10
English version of this *Code* to be considered correct Pre. 11
Epithet (see under Cultivar, Grex and Group epithet, for entries specific to each) 8
– abbreviation 35.9
– alphabetical, when established in non-alphabetic scripts 34A.2
– competing 11.8, 29.1, 29.2
– confusingly similar 21.23, 21. Nt. 3, 22A.1, 29.3
– duplication, permitted 6.1
– equivalent, where abbreviation spelled in full 35.9
– euphony of Pre. 1
– first letter in corrections 35A.1
– first syllable in corrections 35A.1
– formation 8.3
– – cultivar epithets 21
– – grex epithets 23.3
– – Group epithets 22.4
– in non-Roman alphabets and characters 27F.1, 27F.2
– in language different from that of publication 27D.3, 34A.2, 34A.3
– non-alphabetic scripts, epithets established in one and presented in another 34A.3
– re-use 30
– – authorized by statutory authority 30. Nt. 1
– – original no longer in cultivation 30.2
– – subsequent re-use 30.4
– styling of 8A.1
– – to indicate category 8.2
– – typographical distinction 8A.1
Equivalent epithets 35.9
Espalier 2. Ex. 27
Established custom Pre. 9
Established name 10
– earliest 11.1
– rejection where in conflict with prior right 31.3
Establishment Prin. 9, Div. II Chap. VI
– author does not accept name 27.6
– citation of organization maintaining nomenclatural standard 27H.1
– conditions 27
– conformity with legislation 10. Nt. 1
– correct spelling as provided on 35.2
– cultivar name 18.1, 27.1, 27.5, 27. Nt. 1, 27A.1
– date 9.1
– – where conditions not fulfilled simultaneously 9.1
– definition 10.1
– ensured by registration Div. IV. 2
– graft-chimaeric name 27.1, 27.3
– grex name 18.1, 27.1, 27.3
– Group name 18.1, 27.1, 27A.1
– in non-Roman alphabets and characters 27F.1, 27F.2
– names for which no plants exist 27.7
– provisional listing 27.6
– simultaneous publication in same work 27.8
– variety denomination 27. Nt. 2
Exaggeration in cultivar epithets 21.24
Exclamation mark, use in epithet 21.18
Existing usage in competing names 29.1, 29.2

F_1 hybrid
– definition 2.16

– may form cultivar 2.16
– which retains characters 2.18
Forestry Pre. 1
Forgotten names, resurrecting 29A.1
Form (English)
– not to be used as or in cultivar epithet 21.16
– used as equivalent to "cultivar" 2.2, 2. Nt. 3
Form (German), used as equivalent to "cultivar" 2. Nt. 3
forma (f.), not equivalent to "cultivar" 2. Nt. 1
Forma (Spanish, etc.), used as equivalent to "cultivar" 2. Nt. 3
Forme (French), used as equivalent to "cultivar" 2. Nt. 3
Formula
– condensed Div. III. 2–6, 8, 9, 11
– graft-chimaeric 24.1, 24.2
Forward slash, use in epithet 21.18
Fractions, use in epithets 21.19
French, equivalent of "cultivar" in 2. Nt. 2, 2. Nt. 3
Full stop (period) 21.18, 35B.1
Fungi Pre. 7, Prin. 2
Future names and naming Pre. 4, Pre. 5

"Garden form" as equivalent of "cultivar" 2. Nt. 3
Gei 3. Nt. 2
Gender, agreement in epithets in Latin form 21.8–10
Gene bank and re-use 30.2
General provisions Div. II. Chap. I
Generic, trademark becoming 8. Nt. 1
Genetically modified plants Pre. 1 fn, 2.19, 2. Nt. 6
Genus
– common name 21.2, 21.20, 21.22
– denomination class 6.2
– graft-chimaeric see Graft-chimaeric genus
– hybrid, name of Div. III
– name in Latin form 21.2
Geographical sources 2. Ex. 10
German, equivalent of "cultivar" in 2. Nt. 2, 2. Nt. 3
Germplasm, variation Div. V. Nt. 9
Glendoick® 31. Ex. 4
Gordianus, as an epithet 21. Ex. 22
Gortel-1 2. Ex. 11
Gp, as abbreviation of "Group" 15.2
Graft, on rootstock 2.22
Graft-chimaera (see also Mutation-chimaera)
– addition sign 24.2, 24.3
– components belong to same genus 24.5
– cultivar name 24.4
– cultivar indicators 14.2
– definition 2.11, 5.1
– distinctive, from same component taxa 24.6
– formula 24.1, 24.2
– may form cultivar 2.11
– name 24
– not a sexual hybrid 5.1
– order of component taxa 24.2
– publication of names 25.3
– recognition as cultivar 5.1
– rejection of name 31.1
Graft-chimaeric genus Prin. 2
– accepted name 11.1
– citation of author 28.6
– connecting vowel in graft-chimaeric names 24.3, Div. III. 4, 6
– date of name 9.1
– defined by statement of parentage Div. V. Nt. 4
– establishment of name 27.1, 27.3
– formation of name 24.3
– name 1.2, 24.3
– – distinctiveness 24.3
– nomenclatural standard Div. V. Nt. 2, Nt. 4
– publication of name and parentage 9. Nt. 1
– same component genera 24.5
– starting point for 18.3
– type specimen Div. V. Nt. 2
Grafting 2.11, 5.1
Grammatical correctness Pre. 1
Grex (see also Grex epithets and names) 4
– and nothospecies, progeny of 23. Nt. 2
– backcrossed 23. Nt. 1
– based on statement of parentage Div. V. Nt. 4
– definition 4.1

– Groups within 4.2
– nomenclatural standard Div. V. Nt. 4
– not equivalent to nothospecies from same two species 23. Nt. 1
– parent taxonomy changes 4.3, 4.4
– parentage 4. Nt. 1
– publication of category, name and parentage 9. Nt. 1
– reciprocal cross 4. Nt. 2
– restatement of parentage when parent name changes 4.4
Grex epithets and names (see also Rules for formation of cultivar epithets, 21.8–21.24 and Recommendations 21A–M) 8.2, 23
– abbreviation 35.9
– acceptance of Div. IV. 1
– accepted name 11.1
– becomes synonym 4. Ex. 2
– capital letters 23.2
– citation of author 28.2
– competing names 29.2
– confusingly similar epithets 29.3
– conserved 12.1
– contrary to wishes of raiser or breeder 31.4
– correction see Corrections to spelling
– date 9.1
– definition 8.1, 23.1
– details to be stated on publication 27D.2
– derivation as guide to correction 35.14
– duplication 6
– earliest established name 4.3
– establishment 18.1, 27.1, 27.3
– – ensured by registration Div. IV. 2
– – where parentage imperfectly known 27.4
– formation 8.3, 23.3
– epithet
– governed by this *Code*, not *ICN* Prin. 2, 1.3, 1.4, 1A.1
– "grex", the word 16.1, 23.4, 23A.1
– – or "gx" required in name 16.3, 16.4
– hyphenation 35.11, 35. Nt. 1
– new name not to be established 4.3, 4.4
– non-Roman scripts 27F.1, 27F.2
– offensive 21K.1, 31.8
– only used in orchid nomenclature 4.1
– recording trademarks in Register Div. IV. 6
– registration Prin. 8
– – establishment ensured by Div. IV. 2
– rejection 31.1
– relation to nothospecific epithet 23.5, 23. Nt. 1, 23. Nt. 3
– re-use 30
– starting point 18.1, 18.2
– status 16
– – indication 16.1
– styling 8. Ex. 3
– – distinguished from nothospecific epithet 23. Nt. 3
– – distinguished typographically 8.A.1
– – indicators of category 8.2
– – printed in italics 8A.1
– – round brackets (parentheses) 16.2
– term not to be used as or in cultivar epithet 21.17
– transcription 32.1, 34.1, 35. Nt. 1
– translation 32.1
– – regarded as trade designation 32. Nt. 1
– transliteration 32.1, 33.1
– used as Group epithet 22.6
– where parents become synonymous 4.3
– with Group epithet 16.4
Group 3
– assignment to more than one 3.4
– author Div. V. 13
– breeder details Div. V. 13
– circumscription redefined, new name if 3.5
– criteria for forming 3.2
– definition 3.1
– divided 3.5
– equivalent terms
– – in other languages 15.1, 15.2
– – to be replaced 3. Nt. 1
– introducer Div. V. 13
– judgement of merit or distinctness by ICRA Div. IV. 5
– nomenclatural standard Div. V. 1
– nominant Div. V. 13
– publication of category, name and circumscription 9. Nt. 1
– raiser Div. V. 13
– status 15
– united with another Group 3.5

– within grex 4.2
Group epithets and names (see also Rules for formation of cultivar epithets, 21.5–21.24 and Recommendations 21A–M excl. 21G) 22
– abbreviation
– – in and of 35.9
– – of word "Group" 15.2
– acceptance of Div. IV. 1
– accepted name 11.1
– adopted from another language 32A.1
– based on epithet formed under *ICN* 27E.1
– citation of author 28.2
– competing names 29.2
– confusion
– – similar epithets 29.3
– – with cultivar epithet 22A.1
– conserved 12.1
– contrary to wishes of raiser or breeder 31.4
– correction see Corrections to spelling
– created from Series 22. Ex. 10, 22. Ex. 11
– date 9.1
– definition 8.1
– derivation as guide to correction 35.14
– details to be stated on publication 27D.2
– duplication 6
– equivalent to word or phrase in other languages 22.2
– establishment 18.1, 27.1, 27A.1
– – ensured by registration Div. IV. 2
– formation 8.3, 22.4
– – from epithet of taxon no longer recognized 3.3, 29.4
– – from gei 3. Nt. 2
– – from grex epithet 22.6
– governed by this *Code*, not *ICN* 1.3, 1A.1
– hyphenation 35.11, 35. Nt. 1
– indication of status by use of "Group" 15.1
– Latin form 32. Nt. 2
– length (Cumberland and Westmorland Group) 22. Ex. 4
– more than one accepted name 11.5
– new name to be provided 3.5
– nomenclature governed by this *Code* Prin. 2, 1.4
– non-Roman scripts 27F.1, 27F.2
– offensive 21K.1, 31.8
– publication in ephemeral material 25A.1
– recording trademarks in Register Div. IV. 6
– registration Prin. 8
– rejection 31.1
– rendered between alphabetic scripts 33.1
– re-use 30
– starting point 18.1
– styling 8. Ex. 2
– – distinguished typographically 8.A.1
– – indicators of category 8.2
– – printed in italics 8A.1
– – round brackets (parentheses) 15.3
– – with cultivar name 15.3
– term "group" not to be used as or in cultivar epithet 21.17
– transcription 34.1, 35. Nt. 1
– translation 32.2
– transliteration 33.1
– use of initial capital letters 22.3
– with grex epithet 16.4
– word "Group" part of 22.5
Gx, the contraction 16.1, 16.3, 16.4
– occurs once 23.4
– presentation of 23A.1

Habeas Corpus, as an epithet 21. Ex. 20
Hand-copied books 25.2
Hand-written names Pre. 10
Hangeul 34C.1
Hanyu Pinyin Fang'an 34B.1
Heiti typeface in trade designations 17. Ex. 2
Hepburn (modified) system of Romanization 34D.1
Herbarium,recognized Div. V. 14
Herbarium specimen Div. V. 1
– expert preparation of Div. V. 14
– nomenclatural standard Div. V
Hinshu (Japanese), used as equivalent to "cultivar" 2. Nt. 2
Hiragana 34D.1, 34D.2
Horticulture Pre. 1
Human activity, intentional, plants resulting from Pre. 7, Prin. 2

Hybrid
– F_1, forming cultivar 2.16
– formula Div. III. 2
– genus Div. III
– – derived from four or more genera Div. III. 5
– – derived from three genera Div. III. 6
– – derived from two genera Div. III. 4
– – description not required Div. III. 10
– – not to have same name as graft-chimaera 24.3
– – priority Div. III. 12
– indication of Div. III. 2
– naming
– – under *ICN* 1.4, Div. III. 1
– – under this *Code* 1.4
– term not to be used as or in cultivar epithet 21.17
– used as equivalent to "Group" 3. Nt. 1, 3. Ex. 7
Hyphen 21.18
– capital letters in words after 21.3
– case after 35.12
– erroneous use 35.14
– in transcribed Japanese names 34. Nt. 2
– in transcriptions 35. Nt. 1
– removing 35.11

IJsselham, in epithet 21. Ex. 7
Illustration
– in published journal as nomenclatural standard Div. V. Nt. 7
– provision recommended 27C.1
Illustrative material for new cultivars and Groups 27G.1
Images
– designated nomenclatural standards Div. V. 3
– – copyright in Div. V. Nt. 5
– digital Div. V. 3
– printed from digital files as nomenclatural standards Div. V. Nt. 6
– superseded by specimens Div. V. Nt. 8
"Improved", not to be used in cultivar epithet 21.17
Inbreeding, repeated 2.14
Indelible autograph 25.1, 25.3, 25. Nt. 2
– graft-chimaeric names published in 25.3
India, as an epithet 21. Ex. 23
Initialism see Abbreviation
Intellectual property in trademarks Prin. 6
Intentional human activity, plants resulting from Pre. 7, Prin. 2
International Code of Nomenclature for algae, fungi, and plants (ICN) 1.1, Prin. 2
– Appendix I (Names of hybrids) 1.4
– citation of author's name 28A.1
– current edition Pre. 8
– names in accordance with 1.1, 1A.1
– names of hybrids 1.4, Div. III. 1
– provisions for author citation 28A.1
– relationship to *ICNCP* 1
– scope Prin. 2
International Cultivar Registration Authority (ICRA)
– acceptance by not a judgement on merit Div. IV. 5
– announcement of new denomination class 6.3
– application for starting point 18.1
– appointment of Div. IV. 2
– choice of names 29.2, 29.3
– definition Div. IV. 2
– designation of accepted name 11.6, 11.8
– electronic publication of Register or Checklist 25. Nt. 3, 25C.1, 25C.2
– proposals where no appropriate ICRA exists 11.7
– provisional listing by 27.6
– publications, sending to 25B.1
– re-use of names 11.8, 30.1–4
– sending a specimen / illustrative material to 27G.1
– trademarks Div. IV. 6
Interstem 2.22
Intracellular organism, characters derived from 2.10
Introducer cited in publication of new cultivar, Group or grex name 27D.1, 27D.2
ISHS Special Commission for Nomenclature and Cultivar Registration
– and ICRAs Div. IV. 2
– designation of starting points 18.1
– special denomination class determined by 6.2

ISO transliteration standards 33. Nt. 3, 33. Ex. 2, 33A.1
Italian, equivalent of "cultivar" in 2. Nt. 2
Italics, in epithets 8A.1
IUBS International Commission for the Nomenclature of Cultivated Plants
– definitive ruling by 11.7, 11.9
– if no longer extant Div. VI
– modification of this *Code* Div. VI
– publication of decision 19.3
– rejection of offensive epithets 31.8
– role in acceptance of disputed name 11.6, 11.7
– ruling on conservation 11.7, 11.9, 12.1, 19.1
– ruling on re-use 30.3
– Secretary 19.2, 30.3

Japanese
– equivalent of "cultivar" in 2. Nt. 2
– epithets identical to Chinese 21. Ex. 50
– hand-copied books 25.2
– horticulture, classes in 3. Nt. 2
– transcription 34D.1
– use of hyphens in transcribed names 34. Nt. 2
Julia, as an epithet 21. Ex. 22
Julius Caesar, as an epithet 21. Ex. 22
Juvenile cutting material 2. Ex. 3

Kaki, transcribed from Japanese 21. Ex. 50
Kanji 21. Ex. 50, 34D.1, 34D.2
Katakana 34D.1, 34D.2
Kenkyusha's *New Japanese–English Dictionary* 34D.1, 34. Nt. 2
Korea, Republic of, Ministry of Culture and Tourism 34C.1
Korean
– characters 34C.1
– hand-copied books 25.2
– transcription to Roman alphabet 34C.1

Labels, publication by 25.1
Language other than Latin
– correct spelling in 35.2
– Group epithet translated from Latin 32.2
– agreement in epithets in Latin form 21.8–10
– common phrases 21.12
– competing epithets 29.1
– cultivar epithets 21.5–21.12
– duplication 31.6
– – final epithet of higher taxon 21B.1
– epithets entirely in Latin 21.11
– genus name 21.2
– names under *ICN* Prin. 2
– name of genus in cultivar epithet 21.20
– personal names 21.12
– place names 21.12
– repeated within denomination class 21.7
– retained in cultivar epithet 21.5, 21.6, 35.1
– spelling 35.1, 32. Nt. 2
– words used in current languages 21.12
Legal conventions, word "variety" as equivalent of "cultivar" in 2. Nt. 4
Legislation Prin. 5, 6. Nt. 1
– conformity with of established names 10. Nt. 1
Length of epithets 21.13, 21D.1
– when Romanized 21L.1
Letters, alternating with numbers 21.25
Libraries
– and publication 25.1, 25B.1
– designated 25. Nt. 3, 25C.1, 25C.2
Ligature, transcription of 35.7
Line
– definition 2.14
– genetically modified 2. Nt. 6
– may form cultivar 2.14
Lineages, distinguishing different 21N.1
Linguistic custom
– abbreviated forms of address 35.9
– adding diacritic marks 35.6
– apostrophe 35.13
– capital letters
– – cultivar names 21.3
– – grex names 23.2
– – Group names 22.3
– hyphenation 35.12
Linnaeus, *Species plantarum* as starting point 18.1, 18.3
Londinium, as an epithet 21. Ex. 23
Lower-case "x" Div. III. 3

Macron in Japanese transcriptions 34D.2

"Maintenance", not to be used as or in cultivar epithet 21.17
Major, as an epithet 21. Ex. 20
Marketing device, use of trade designation as Prin. 6, 13.1
Marston Magna, as an epithet 21. Ex. 23
Marylebone Cricket Club, abbreviation of 35. Ex. 21
Microform, publication by 25.1, 25. Nt. 1
Micropropagation 2. Ex. 21
Minor, as an epithet 21. Ex. 20
Mister, abbreviation of 35. Ex. 20
"Mixture", not to be used as or in cultivar epithet 21.17
Modification of this *Code* Pre. 6, Div. VI
Mons, as an epithet 21. Ex. 23
Monsieur, in cultivar epithet 35. Ex. 10
Monstrose plants 2. Ex. 20
Multiline
– definition 2.15
– genetically modified 2. Nt. 6
– may form cultivar 2.15
Multiplication sign Div. III. 2, Div. III. 3, 14.3
Museum, as an epithet 21. Ex. 20
Mutant tissue 2. Ex. 6, 2. Ex. 18, 5.2
Mutation-chimaera
– definition 5.2
– may form cultivar 2.11, 5.2

Name 8
– accepted 11
– adopted 11.2, 11.3, 11.4, 17.2, Div. IV. 4
– author's, citation of 28
– availability for use Prin. 4
– – and trademarks Prin. 6
– becoming generic 8. Nt. 1
– change, proper reasons for Pre. 8
– choice of 29
– common, of species, as cultivar epithet 21.22
– competing epithets in Latin form 29.1
– compliance with this *Code* as condition of establishment 27.1
– components in italics 8A.1
– conserved 11.7, 12, 19
– contrary to this *Code* Pre. 8, 11.5
– – conserved if accepted by ICRA 19.1
– – rejected if 31.1
– – when conserved 12.1
– cultivar 21
– – general provisions 21.1–21.4
– – in form of code 21.5
– – in Latin form 21.5–21.10
– – in non-Latin form 21.11–21.14
– – prohibitions 21.15–21.24
– date of 9.2
– disputed, conservation if 19.1
– earliest Prin. 3
– established 10
– for which no plants exist 27.7
– genus name as cultivar epithet 21.20, 21.21
– graft-chimaeric genera 1.2, 11.1, 24.3, 27.1, 27.3
– grex 8.2, 23
– Group 8.1, 22
– hybrid genera Div. III
– – application Div. III. 11
– – priority Div. III. 12
– hybrids between taxa 1.4
– in non-Roman script 27F.1, 27F.2
– Latin form Prin. 2
– not accepted by author 27.6
– not validly published under *ICN* 21. Nt. 2
– obvious from context
– – cultivar name 21. Nt. 1
– – Group name 22. Nt. 1
– precedence of names established under legislation Prin. 5
– presentation of Pre. 10, Div. II. Chap. III
– published in anticipation Div. III. 14
– published without description under *ICN* 21. Nt. 2
– purpose of Pre. 1
– resurrecting long-forgotten or obsolete 29A.1
– scions of different cultivars grafted on rootstock 2. Nt. 7
– trademark Div. IV. 6
– – not name under this *Code* Prin. 6
– unnecessary creation of Pre. 1
– widely used but contrary to this *Code* 11.6–7
– without clear indication of rank 21. Nt. 2

– working names 21C.1
– written in several ways 8.1
Naming plants Div. II Chap. V
– in cultivation 20
– of the past and future Pre. 4
National Aeronautical and Space Agency, abbreviation of 35. Ex. 21
National Listing Prin. 5
Naughty but Nice, Naughty-but-nice, as epithets 21. Ex. 8
Nil desperandum, as an epithet 21. Ex. 21
Noli me tangere, as an epithet 21. Ex. 21
"Nomen nudum" (definition) 21. Ex. 12
Nomenclatural standard Div. V
– citation
– – of holder Div. V. 7
– – of holding institution 27H.1
– – to fix accepted name Prin. 9, 29.3
– clonal cultivar Div. V. 5
– collections of 27G.1
– date of collection for Div. V. 12
– definition Div. V. 1
– designation Prin. 9, Div. V. 7
– donation of material Div. V. 14
– dried specimen Div. V. 9
– duplicates Div. V. 11
– earliest designated Div. V. 8
– germplasm Div. V. 6
– graft-chimaeric genus Div. V. Nt. 2, Div. V. Nt. 4
– grex Div. V. Nt. 4
– illustration Div. V. 3
– image Div. V. 3, Div. V. Nt. 6, Div. V. Nt. 7
– importance in stablizing names Prin. 9
– in portfolio Div. V. 10, Div. V. Nt. 5
– in special folder Div. V. 9
– location of living material for Div. V. 12
– more than one designated Div. V. 8
– precedence Div. V. 8
– purpose of Div. V. Nt. 1
– reference to Div. V. Nt. 9
– seed-raised cultivar Div. V. 6
– suitable Div. V. 14
– supporting nomenclatural type Div. V. 4
– type specimen Div. V. 2
– use of word "standard" Div. V. Nt. 10
– variation in germplasm Div. V. Nt. 9
– verification of Div. V. 13
– voucher specimen Div. V. 2
Nomenclatural type Div. III. 11, Div. V. Nt. 1
– designation of Div. V. Nt. 1
– graft-chimaeric genera Div. V. Nt. 2
– interpretation ambiguous Div. V. 4
– precedence over nomenclatural standard Div. V. 4
Nominant cited in publication of new cultivar, Group or grex name 27D.1, 27D.2
Non sequitur, as an epithet 21. Ex. 21
Non-scientific newspapers, publication in 25.3, Div. III. 13
Not Only but Also, Not-only-but-also 21. Ex. 8
Notho- (prefix), use of Div. III Nt. 1
Nothospecies
– distinguishing typographically 23. Nt. 3
– hybridized with grex of same parentage 23. Nt. 2
– not equivalent to grex 23. Nt. 1
– where epithet same as a grex epithet 23.5, 23. Nt. 3
Noun
– possessive 35.13
– qualified with adjective 21.10
Nova Scotia, as an epithet 21. Ex. 23
Novel invention as cultivar epithet 21.14
'N!xau' 21. Ex. 31
Objection
– to designation of accepted name 11.9
– to proposal for conservation 11.9
Obsolete names, resurrection of 29A.1
Offence, epithet that might cause 21K.1, 31.8
Orchids
– cultivar epithet
– – linked to grex 6.5
– – linked to species 6.5
– denomination classes in 6.5
– flower colours Div. V. Ex. 3
– names, starting point 18.2
– nomenclature, use of grex in 4. Nt. 1
Organisms
– intracellular, characters derived from2.10
– traditionally treated as plants Pre. 7
Original spelling
– correction to 9.2

– hyphenation 35.11
Origins, false impression as to 21J.1
Ortet 20. Ex. 2
Orthography 35
Overscore (macron) in Japanese transcriptions 34D.2
Page number in descriptions 27B.1
Paintings Div. V. Ex. 3
Parentage
– assemblage based solely on 4.1
– details of, in nomenclatural standards Div. V. 10
– grex 4.1, Div. V. Nt. 4
– graft-chimaeric Div. V. Nt. 4
– parental genera Div. III. 4
Parentheses
– grex epithet in 16.2
– Group epithet in, before cultivar 15.3
Paris Convention, effect on established names 31. Ex. 5
Parkway® 31. Ex. 3
Past names Pre. 4
Paulus, as an epithet 21. Ex. 22
Pedigree, effect on re-use of epithets 30.2
Peninsula, as an epithet 21. Ex. 20
Period (full stop) 35B.1
– use in epithet 21.18
Permission, to use names of living persons 21E.1
Person, use of word in this *Code* Prin. 4 fn
Personal initials, expansion in epithets 35.10
Personal names, in Latin form 21.12
Persons, regard for Pre. 1
Photographic image Div. V. Ex. 3
– for new cultivars and Groups 27G.1
Phytoplasma 2. Ex. 5
Pinyin 34B.1
Pinzhong (Chinese), used as equivalent to "cultivar" 2. Nt. 2
Place names, in Latin form 21.12
Plant Breeders' Rights Prin. 5, 17. Ex. 1, 27. Nt. 2
– EU 11. Ex. 1
Plant labels and use of unrecognized cultivar designations 14. Nt. 2
Plant Variety Rights Prin. 5
Plants
– identity of Div. V. Nt. 3
– names if brought into cultivation from the wild 20.1, 20.2
Ploidy level, plants arising from change in 2.17
Portfolio Div. V. 10, Div. V. Nt. 5
Portuguese, equivalent of "cultivar" in 2. Nt. 2
Possessive noun 35.13
Potyvirus 2. Ex. 5
Prepositions, in cultivar epithet 21.3
Precedence under legislation Prin. 5
Presentation of names Div. II. Chap. III
Prevailing custom Pre. 1
Printed material
– definition 25. Nt. 1
– ephemeral, publication in 25A.1
– publication by 25.1, 25. Nt. 1
Printed names Pre. 10
Prior right, in conflict with established name 31.3
Priority 11. Ex. 4, 21B.1, 31. Ex. 8, 31. Ex. 9
– limitation of the Principle of Div. II. Chap. IV
– names of hybrid genera Div. III. 12
– names discovered with priority 29A.1
– Principle of Prin. 3
Professor, abbreviation of 35. Ex. 20
Prohibitions
– in cultivar epithets 21.15–21.24
– punctuation marks in epithets 21.18
– words in epithets 21.16, 21.17, 21.20
Propagation
– before naming cultivar 2. Nt. 5
– different modes in cultivars 2.5
Proper nouns, in cultivar epithet 21.3
Proposal, to accept name contrary to *Code* 11.6
Provenance, seed from particular as cultivar 2.13
Provisional listing, by ICRA 27.6
Public herbarium maintaining collections of nomenclatural standards 27G.1
Public meeting, publication by 25.1
Publication 7, 25–28
– against wishes of raiser or breeder 31.4
– as condition of establishment 27.1
– by ICRA to fix accepted name 29.3
– conditions of 25

– date 26
– – in descriptions 27B.1
– definition 25.1
– designation of nomenclatural standard Div. V. 7
– hybrid genera Div. III. 10
– in ephemeral material 25A.1
– lists of registered names Prin. 8
– priority of Prin. 3
– reference to title in descriptions 27B.1
– re-use where epithet rarely used in 30.2
– sheets not permanently bound 26A.1
– simultaneous in the same work 27.8
– spanning more than one year 26.3
– to be dated 26.1
Punctuation marks, in cultivar epithet 21.15, 21.18
Purpose of names Pre. 1
Quotation marks
– alternatives to, in cultivar names 14.1
– double 14.1
– single 14.1
– trade designations presented within 17.1
Raiser
– as distinguishing device added to cultivar epithet 30.5
– citing in publication of new cultivar, Group or grex name 27D.1, 27D.2
– false impression as to 21J.1
– name contrary to wishes of 31.4
Ramet 20. Ex. 2
Range of variation 20.2
Ras (Dutch), used as equivalent to "cultivar" 2. Nt. 2
Reciprocal cross in grexes 4. Nt. 2
Recommendations Pre. 3
– names contrary to Pre. 5
– their scope Pre. 7
– to be followed Pre. 5
Registrant
– author of name 28.4
– definition Div. IV. 8
Registrar, definition Div. IV. 7
Registration Prin. 8, Div. IV
– definition Div. IV. 1
– of names contrary to this *Code* Div. IV. 4
Rejection of names 31
– accepted cultivar name 11.3
– basis for proposal for 31. Nt. 1
– contrary to Recommendations Pre. 5
– cases where not permitted 31.2
– offensive epithets 31.8
– publication against wishes of raiser or breeder 31.4
– superfluous name 31.7
– under earlier editions of this *Code* 31.5
Replacement name
– accepted cultivar name 11.3
– duplicate name rejected 31.6
– established name in conflict with prior right 31.3
– provided under earlier editions of this *Code* 31.5
– superfluous 31.7
Reproduction, agamospermous 2.18
Retroactive provisions Prin. 11
Re-use of names 6, 30
– conditions for 30.2
– confusion caused by 30.2
– definitive ruling 30.3
– objection to 30.3
– where re-use already accepted 30.4
Reverse transcription 34. Nt. 1
Reverse transliteration 33. Nt. 1
Roman numeral, in cultivar epithet 21.15
Romanization 35. Nt. 1, 27F.1, 27F.2
– alphabet 33A.1
– cause of confusion in cultivar epithets 21.23
– cultivar epithet length 21L.1
– hyphenation 35. Nt. 1
– Japanese epithets, diacritical marks in 34D.2
– transcription from Chinese 34B.1
– transcription from Japanese 34D.1
– transcription from Korean 34C.1
– tables, ALA-LC 33. Nt. 2, 33. Ex. 1, 33A.1, 34D.1
Rōmanji 34D.1
Rootstock 2.22
– clonal 21. Ex. 54
Royal Hose-in-hose 21. Ex. 8
Rule
– absence of Pre. 9
– consequences doubtful Pre. 9
– established custom Pre. 9
– object of Pre. 4

– scope Pre. 7
Russian, equivalent of "cultivar" in 2. Nt. 2
Saint, abbreviation of 35. Ex. 20
San language 21. Ex. 31
Scandinavian languages, equivalent of "cultivar" in 2. Nt. 2
Scions of different cultivars on same rootstock 2.22, 2. Ex. 25, 2. Nt. 7
Scope of *Code*, legal names Prin. 5
Seed from a particular provenance, propagation from 2.12, 2.13
Seed bank and re-use 30.2
Seed-exchange lists, publication in 25.3, Div. III. 13
"Selection", not to be used as or in cultivar epithet 21.17
Selections Pre. 1 fn, 3. Nt. 1, 3. Ex. 8
Self-fertilization, repeated 2.14
Series
– not a category recognized by this *Code* 22B.1
– not to be used as or in cultivar epithet 21.17
– to be treated as Groups 22B.1
– transposition into Group 22. Ex. 10, 22. Ex. 11
's-Hertogenbosch, in epithet 21. Ex. 7
Silk Road not Shiruku-rōdo 34. Ex. 1
Similarity, character-based: Group as category based on 3.1
Single quotation marks 14.1
Songti 17. Ex. 2
Sort, used as equivalent to "Group" 3. Nt. 1
Sort (Scandinavian and Russian), used as equivalent to "cultivar" 2. Nt. 2
Sorte (German), used as equivalent to "cultivar" 2. Nt. 2
Spanish, equivalent of "cultivar" in 2. Nt. 2, 2. Nt. 3
Species
– common name transcribed from Japanese 21.21
– no longer recognized designated Group 3. Ex. 4
Specimens of new cultivars or Groups 27G.1
Spelling 35
– correction see Corrections to spelling
– – epithets in Latin form 35.1
– – epithets in non-Latin form 35.2
– where epithets published under *ICN* 35.1
"Sport", not to be used as or in cultivar epithet 21.17
Stability
– in naming Pre. 1, Prin. 1, Prin. 8
– nomenclatural standards Prin. 9
– of characters 2.3
Starting point 18
– as condition of establishment 27.1
– for cultivar and Group names 18.1
– for graft-chimaeric genera 18.3
– for orchid grex names 18.1, 18.2
Statutory plant registration authority
– acceptance of names by ICRA Div. IV. 4
– cultivar epiphets, formation of 11. Nt. 1
– definition Div. IV. 3
– denomination classes 6. Nt. 1
– establishment of cultivar names 27.5
– nomenclatural standard Div. V. 5
– provisional listing of names 27.6
– rejection of names by 11.3, 31.2
– re-use of names 30. Nt. 1
– seed-raised cultivar Div. V. 6
Statutory protection, lapse of 11.4
Statutory term, word "variety" as equivalent of "cultivar" 2. Nt. 4
"Strain"
– not to be used as or in cultivar epithet 21.17
– used as equivalent to "cultivar" 2.2
Suffix *–ara* Div. III. 5–7, Div. III. 9
Symbols, use in epithets 21.19
Synonym
– accepted name when rejected or replaced 11.3
– definition 11.2
– relation to trade designation 13.2
– trade designation not to be cited as a synonym 13.2
– used as trade designation 13. Nt. 1
System of naming Pre. 1
Taxon Pre. 1
– at species rank or below reclassified as cultivar 21.5
– definition Pre. 1

– name change 21.4
– no longer recognized and incorporated in epithet 3.3, 29.4
– nomenclatural type Div. V. Nt. 1, Div. V. Nt. 2
– reclassified as cultivar 21.5
Taxonomic study, changes to names as a result of Pre. 8
Ten Bob Note, as an epithet 21. Ex. 64
Teratological form 2. Ex. 20
Term, in Latin form 21.12
terminology, of statutory plant registration authority 31.2
Tetraploid clone 2. Ex. 15
Theses, unpublished 25. Nt. 1
Topiary 2. Ex. 27
Topophysic clone
– definition 2.7
– may form cultivar 2.7
Topovariant, definition 2.13
Trade catalogue
– date of 26.3
– electronically published 25. Nt. 3, 25C.1, 25C.2
– – date of publication 26. Nt. 1
– no evidence of date 26.4
– publication in 25.3, Div. III. 13
– sending copies to ICRA 25B.1
Trade designation 13
– cited with accepted or adopted name 17.2
– collective name given to scions of different cultivars grafted on same rootstock 2. Nt. 7
– definition 13.1
– derived from nationally important cultivar names 13. Nt. 2
– derived from synonym 13. Nt. 1
– formation not regulated by this *Code* Prin. 6
– from translated epithet 32. Nt. 1
– in Chinese 17. Ex. 2
– not to be cited as a synonym 13.2
– status 17
– styling 8. Nt. 2
– – distinguished typographically 17.3
– – placed within quotation marks 17.1
Trade list, confidential, publication by 25.1
Trademark Prin. 6
– accompanied by accepted or adopted name 8. Nt. 1
– genetically modified plants 2. Nt. 6
– in conflict with established name 31.3
– not to be confused with names Div. IV. 6
– recording of by ICRAs Div. IV. 6
– risk of becoming generic 8. Nt. 1
Transcription 34
– "#" 35.8
– "&" 35.8
– "ß" 35.8
– alphabetical epithets, when established in non-alphabetic scripts 34A.2
– author's name 28.3
– consistency in 34A.1
– corrections of spellings in 35.2
– cultivar or grex names 32.1
– hyphenation 35. Nt. 1
– length 21L.1
– ligature 35.7
– provided on establishment of non-Roman names 27F.1
– recommended standards 27F.1
– reverse 34. Nt. 1
"Transformed", not to be used as or in cultivar epithet 21.17
Translation
– author's name 28.3
– corrections of spellings in 35.2
– cultivar name 32.1
– discrepancies in Pre. 11
– epithets 32
– grex name 32.1
– Group epithet 32.2
– of this *Code*
– – discrepancies in Pre. 11
– – use of *varietas*, *forma* or subspecies as equivalent to cultivar in 2.2
Transliteration 33
– author's name 28.3
– consistency within publication 33A.1
– corrections of spellings in 35.2
– cultivar or grex names 32.1
– Cyrillic script 33. Ex. 1, 33. Ex. 2
– ISO standards 33A.1
– length 21L.1

– provided on establishment of non-Roman names 27F.1
– recommended standards 27F.1, 33A.1
– reverse 33. Nt. 1
Trial, name used during 21C.1
Type, used as equivalent to "Group" 3. Nt. 1
Typescripts, publication by 25.1
Typography
– graft-chimaera 24.2, 24.3
– grex epithets 23. Nt. 3, 23A.1
– nothospecific epithets 23. Nt. 3
– trade designations 17.3
Uncontrolled pollination 2.12
UNESCO, as epithet 31. Ex. 5
Uniformity
– in characters 2.3
– in naming Prin. 1, Prin. 8
United Nations, as epithet 31. Ex. 5
United Star Ship, abbreviation of 35. Ex. 21
United States Library of Congress 33A.1
United States Patent and Trademark Office 31. Ex. 1, 31. Ex. 3
– author's name 28. Ex. 3
Variation
– range of 20.2
– within a species designated Group 3. Ex. 4
Variedad (Spanish), used as equivalent to "cultivar" 2. Nt. 2
Variedade (Portuguese), used as equivalent to "cultivar" 2. Nt. 2
Varietà (Italian), used as equivalent to "cultivar" 2. Nt. 2
varietas (var.)
– not equivalent to "cultivar" 2. Nt. 1
– no longer recognized designated Group 3. Ex. 4
Variété (French), used as equivalent to "cultivar" 2. Nt. 2
Variety
– not to be used as or in cultivar epithet 21.16
– used as equivalent to "cultivar" 2.2, 2. Nt. 2, 2. Nt. 4
Variety denomination 27. Nt. 1, Div. IV. 3
– establishment of 27. Nt. 2
– proposed 27. Nt. 2
Veberöd 2. Ex. 11
Vowel
– connecting, in graft-chimaeric names 24.3, Div. III. 4, Div. III. 6
– diaeresis 35.5, 35.6
– pronounced long, in Japanese transcriptions 34D.2
Welsh language 32. Ex. 2
Wild plants brought into cultivation, names of 20.1, 20.2
WIPO, as epithet 31. Ex. 5
Witches' broom 2. Ex. 4, 2. Ex. 5
Word(s)
– derivation of, as guide to correction 35.14
– in Latin form 21.12
– novel invention of 21.14
– prohibited in epithets 21.16, 21.17, 21.20
Working name 21C.1
World Bank, as epithet 31. Ex. 5

INTERNATIONAL CODE OF NOMENCLATURE FOR CULTIVATED PLANTS – 2016

The international rules for naming
agricultural, forestry, and horticultural plants
for use by anyone concerned with
the accurate naming of plants.

Containing 11 appendices and a comprehensive glossary
to provide guidance for those needing
to form and maintain the correct names of cultivated plants
and covering topics such as trade designations,
new cultivar names, and conserved and rejected epithets
this work provides
an indispensable reference for:
Plantsmen
The nursery trade
Raisers of new plants
Germplasm collections
Compilers of plant directories
Authors and Editors
Journalists
Teachers and Lecturers
Taxonomists
Governmental bodies
Trademark consultants
Registration authorities

This edition (2016) replaces the previous edition (2009).

ISBN 978-94-6261-116-0

9 789462 611160 >

ISSN 1813-9205